

79609  
PHILLOTT(D C).  
Pindustani stuh-  
hinx-blocks.

# RAJASTHAN UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

DATE LABEL

Call No. P152.3 D9

Accn. No. 79609

*Date of Release  
for loan*

This book should be returned to the library on or before the date last stamped below.



## HINDUSTANI STUMBLING-BLOCKS



# HINDUSTANI STUMBLING-BLOCKS

BEING  
DIFFICULT POINTS IN THE SYNTAX AND  
IDIOM OF HINDUSTANI EXPLAINED  
AND EXEMPLIFIED

BY

LIEUT.-COLONEL D. C. PHILLOTT

SECRETARY, BOARD OF EXAMINERS, CALCUTTA ; GENERAL SECRETARY,  
ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BENGAL ; FELLOW OF THE CALCUTTA UNIVERSITY ;  
AUTHOR OF 'HINDUSTANI STEPPING STONES', ETC.

Translator of the *Nafḥat-ul-Yaman* and the  
*Bāz-Nāma-yi Nāṣirī* ;

Editor of the Persian Translation of *Hājī Bābū* and of the  
*Qurānīn-uṣ-Ṣayyād*, etc., etc.



LONDON  
CROSBY LOCKWOOD AND SON  
7 STATIONERS' HALL COURT, LUDGATE HILL, E.C.  
1909

HERTFORD :  
STEPHEN AUSTIN AND SONS, LTD

SCHOLÆ FELSTEDIENSI

HUNC LIBRUM PIETATIS CAUSA DEDICAVIT  
ALUMNUS D. C. P.



## INTRODUCTION

THE present little work is compiled from the recurring mistakes of candidates for the higher examinations at Calcutta, and from certain matters that have proved, and still prove, stumbling-blocks to the author himself. Many of the difficulties that it is hoped this book will solve, are either not in the ordinary grammars at all, or else are too briefly touched upon.

In preparing the book for the press, the author has naturally consulted all the grammars and dictionaries to which he had access, but his acknowledgments are specially due to Holroyd, Kempson, Hooper, Greaves, and Platts. His thanks are moreover due to the efficient and continuous help of Shams-ul-'Ulamā-Muhammad Yūsuf Ja'farī, Head Maulavi, Board of Examiners, Calcutta, and to Shams-ul-'Ulamā Maulavi Nazir Ahmad Khān Bahādur, LL.D., who kindly revised the troublesome sections on the present and past participles. The Hindustani examples are largely taken from the letters of Ghālib, from textbooks for examinations, and from newspapers of Lahore, Delhi, and Lucknow. Further, to the courtesy of Dr. G. A. Grierson, C.I.E., the author is indebted for the following note on the derivation of the polite imperatives, received unfortunately after the book had gone to press: it should be read in conjunction with, and in substitution for, the second paragraph of XXXVIII, 1 (a) :—

"The so-called 'Polite Imperatives' of Hindostānī, ending in *-iyē* and *-iyē*, are derived, through Prakrit, from the ancient Sanskrit Precative tense. The second person singular of this tense ended, in Sanskrit, in *-yās*; thus, *bhāyās*, 'mayst thou be!' *dēyās*, 'mayst thou give!' *māryās*, 'mayst thou kill!'

"In late Prakrit this *-yās* assumed two forms. Sometimes it became *-jjahi* and sometimes *-īahi*, so that we find forms such as *hojjahi* (from *bhūyūs*), 'mayst thou be!' *dejjahi*, 'mayst thou give!' as well as *māriahi*, 'mayst thou kill!'

"From the first set are descended Hindostānī forms such as *hñjiyē*, and *dijiyē*, while, from the second, we have forms such as *māriyē*.

"Those who are interested in the subject can refer to page 330 of Pischel's Prakrit Grammar, where a number of similar forms in that language will be found for each set."

In conclusion, to quote from honest Senhor Pedro Carolino's delightful, and I would fain add immortal, work, *The New Guide of the Conversation in English*: "We expect then, who the little book (for the care what we wrote him and for her typographical correction) that may be worth the acceptance of studious persons, and especially of the Youth, at which we dedicate him particularly."

D. C. P.

# HINDUSTANI STUMBLING-BLOCKS

## I. LETTERS

1. Note that all the letters of the alphabet are consonants.
2. The letter *r* (্) cannot commence a word, nor is it ever doubled.
3. Note that the letter *n* (়) has two distinct pronunciations: one like the English letter *n*, and the other nasal as in *main*, 'I,' and *hain*, 'are': *vide* VIII, 6 (b).

## II. SUBSTANTIVES

1. In Delhi and Lucknow, such words as *gehūn* (m.), 'wheat,' *chane* (m.), 'gram,' *jau* (m.), 'barley,' etc., are plural. *Ātā* (m.), 'flour,' is, however, singular.
2. *Aslāb*, 'baggage,' is treated as a singular masculine; but as the Arabic plural of *sabab*, 'cause,' it is plural masculine.  
*Augāt* (Ar. plural of *waqt*, m.), in the sense of 'times', is masculine plural, but in the sense of 'livelihood' it is feminine singular.
3. The Deity is singular, and all pronouns and verbs referring to the Deity must be singular.
4. (a) *Salāmat* is properly a noun feminine, but it is now treated as an adjective also. In *Āp salāmat rahiye*, and *Khudā āp ko salāmat rakhe*, a *se* after *salāmat* is, or was, understood. It should not be inserted.  
(b) *Sahīl salāmat* is also treated as an adjective, and is used idiomatically for the grammatical *sahīl sālim*, which, however, is not the idiom.  
(c) For *dīqq* as a substantive and an adjective, *vide* XVII.
5. *Log*. When used in the objective, *log* always requires *ko*, thus: 'He sent people to inquire,' *chand ādmī pūchhne*.

ke wāste bhej-diye, but logon ko pūchhne ke wāste bhej-diyā.  
Vide 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 6, b.

6. (a) Hāth (se), 'by hand of.' In mere hāth (se) or  
mere hāthon (se) the se is better omitted.

(b) Note the following: Main ne apne naukar ke hāth  
(not hāthon) tumhāre pās chitthī bhejī thi, lekin—'I had sent  
you a letter by my servant—'; but Tumhāre hāthon (not  
hāth) main bahut zalil hū,ā, 'I have been disgraced on your  
account.'

In the first case the idea of agency is not prominent, and  
hāth is practically a preposition.

### III. CASES OF NOUNS

1. *Nominative*. For the nominative absolute, *vide VII,*  
Relative Pronouns, 2.

2. *Vocative*. (a) Of the two forms of the vocative the  
inflected form is the better, as: Ay Tāj Bī-bī ke mazār, 'oh,  
tomb of Tāj Bibī!'<sup>1</sup>

(b) In the simple repetition of grief, a fresh epithet is  
usually added to each repetition; thus the pathetic simplicity  
in the repetition, 'O my son Absalom, my son, my son  
Absalom! would God I had died for thee, O Absalom, my  
son, my son!' (2 Sam. xviii, 33), would in *idiomatic Urdu*,  
be rendered in some such way as Hāy mere bete Abī Shalūm,  
mere piyāre Abī Shalūm! Kāsh tere 'ivaz main martā, meri  
ānkhon ke tāre Abī Shalūm. In the Urdu Bible the trans-  
lation of this passage is literal.

3. *Agent case with ne*.

(a) The agent case is not used with the following verbs:

Bolnā

baknā

bhūlnā

Chillānā

lānā

sochnā?

Samajhnā<sup>2</sup>

dikhā, ī denā

sunā, ī denā

<sup>1</sup> i.e. Mumtāz Mahall, entombed in the Taj. She was the wife of  
Shāh Jahān.

<sup>2</sup> In old Urdu these two verbs required *ne*.

[ <i>Sāth denā</i> <sup>1</sup> ]	<i>ma'lūm denā</i>	<i>chal-denā</i>
<i>Ro-denā</i> (shed a few tears)	<i>muskurā-denā</i>	<i>hans-denā</i>
<i>Pakrāī denā</i>		
<i>Kisi ke sāth ho-lenā</i>	<i>ho-lenā</i> (to be finished outright; to call for on the way)	<i>so-lenā</i> (to have done sleeping)
<i>Ro-lenā</i> (to have done weeping)	<i>baj-lenā</i> (to strike the hour)	

(b) The following may or may not take *ne*: <sup>1</sup>—

<i>Sikhnā</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>jannā</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>jītnā</i> <sup>2</sup>
<i>Hārnā</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>chāhnā</i> <sup>3</sup>	

(c) The following take or omit *ne* according to the sense:—

Without *ne*.

<i>Qarūr pānā</i> , to be decided,
<i>Karnā</i> , to be in the habit of,
<i>Pukārnā</i> , to cry out,
<i>Pānā</i> , be allowed,

With *ne*.

to take rest.
to do.
to summon.
to find, get.

(d) Some few authors make *bolnā* and *lōrnā* agree with their cognate accusative, but this should not be imitated.

(e) With several nouns as subjects, *ne* is suffixed to the last only: *Bādshāh, sardāron aur sipāhiyon, sub ne pīth dī* (or *dīkhāī*), 'the king, the leaders, and the men all fled.'

If, however, the subjects are pronouns, *ne* is suffixed to each: *Main ne aur us ne, donon ne, us ko mārā*.

(f) If there is a noun or phrase in apposition to the subject, *ne* comes last, as: *Ek shakhṣ Bahādur nām ne kaka ki . . . ; Ek buddhe ālmī Bahādur nām* (or *nāmī*) *ne kaha ki . . .* *Vide Apposition.*

4. *Genitive.* (a) Note the following significations of the genitive: *Khudā kā shukr*, 'thanks to God'; *mere khottī kā*

<sup>1</sup> *Sāth denā* properly requires *ne*.

<sup>2</sup> In old Urdu these four verbs never took *ne*.

<sup>3</sup> *Main ne chāhā*, but *merā dil chāhā*.

*jawāb*, 'an answer to my letter ;' *pīne kā pānī*, 'water for drinking.' 'drinking-water :' *us kā* (or *us par*) *bharosā nahīn*, 'there is no dependence on him :' *reli kā safar*, 'a journey by rail ;' *baithne ki ijāzat*, 'permission to sit, for sitting :' *bāt kā bārā sachchā hui*, 'he is true to his word,' or, 'he keeps his appointments :' *āj ki rasad*, 'to-day's rations,' 'rations for to-day :' *sone ki ghari*, 'a watch made of gold,' 'a gold watch ;' *bāri bahār kā din*, 'an enjoyable day ;' *bāri bahār ki rāt*, 'an enjoyable night ;' *kūc kā pānī*, 'water from the well ;' *babūl kā darakht*, 'an acacia-tree ;' *Panjāb kā mulk*, 'the country of the Panjab ;' 'the Panjab ;' *gulāb kā phūl*, 'a rose ;' *līn rūpīya kā kaprā*, 'cloth to the value of 3 rupees.'..

(b) *Hisāb ki kitāb* in the sense of 'a book on arithmetic' is an objective genitive, but in the sense of 'an account book' subjective. In *Tumhārī muhabbat men wuh tabāh ho-gayā*, 'he was ruined by his love for you,' *tumhārī* is an objective genitive : but in *Tumhārī muhabbat ne us ko likharāb kardālā*, 'your affection for him ruined him,' it is subjective.

5. *The postposition 'ko'*. The following remarks are to be added to those in 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 6 :—

(a) The *ko* of motion is idiomatically omitted, except in the Panjab, as : *Wuh Lahor gayā*, 'he has gone to Lahore,' but *Lahor ko rawāna hūā* or *Lahor rawāna hūā*, 'he has started for Lahore'; *Wuh shahr gayā*, 'he has gone to the city,' but *shahr men gayā*, 'he entered the city'; *Wuh Wilāyat (not ko) nayā*, 'he has gone to England.'

REMARKE.—With *pahunchā* the postposition *men* may be used or omitted, as : *Main Rangūn pahunchā*, 'I arrived at Rangoon,' but *Rangūn men pahunchā*, 'I entered the city of Rangoon.'

(b) It is omitted after words used in a vague or indeterminate sense, as : *Us ne khāne se hāth uthāyā*, 'he stopped eating ;' *Jahān ke paidā karne-wāle se dil lagāo*, 'fix thy (the) heart on the world's maker.'

(c) *Ko* is necessary in such sentences as : *Jo ko, i drishman*

*ko haqīr samjhe us kī misāl us shakhs kī hai jo thorī āg ko yūn hī chhor-de*, 'one who despises a weak enemy is like one who neglects a little fire' (i.e. *the* fire that is little).

A man with a small head and a large beard reads that these are the signs of a fool; he says to himself, *Main sir ko barā kar-nahin-saktā hūn lekin . . .*, 'I cannot make my (*the*) head large, but . . .'

(d) *Tum jānte ho kis tarah murgh* (or *murgh ko*) *halāl karte hain?* 'do you know how fowls are slaughtered?' In such sentences it is better to omit *ko* after simple verbs, but to insert it after verbs compounded of a verb and substantive, etc.

REMARK.—If *insān* were substituted for *murgh*, the *ko* would be necessary; vide H.S.S., Lesson 6, c (5).

(e) *Ko* is omitted after a cognate accusative: *Hamesha kī nīnd soyā*, 'he slept *the* everlasting sleep.'

(f) Note the insertion and omission of *ko* in—

Q. *Pādshāh ne kis ko dekhā?*

A. *Ek darvesh ko.*

Q. *Kaun thā jis ko pādshāh ne dekhā?*

A. *Darvesh.*

(g) *Kishmish ko* (not *tak*) *abhi bahut din bāqī hain*, 'Christmas is still a long way off; there are many days yet before Christmas;' but *Kishmish ke bahut din bāqī hain*, 'there are many days still left of the Christmas holidays.'

(h) Vide *Log*, II, 5.

(i) *Main ne dūsre ko uske bulāne ko rukhsat kiyā*, 'I dispatched the other to call him.' To avoid this uneuphonious use of *ko* in two different senses in the same clause, it is better to write *uske bulāne ke liye*.

(j) If several nouns are the object of one verb, *ko* is added to the last only, as: *Jhagron aur larā, iyon ko* (or, not so good, *jhagre larā, iyon ko*).

(k) When a phrase is added in apposition, the *ko* is placed at the end, as: 'I saw Zaid the Wazir's son,' *main ne wazir-hc beṭe Zaid ko dekhā*.

REMARK.—A similar order is observed with *ne*; *vide III, 3 (c).*

(l) If a participle is in apposition to a noun, the *ko* directly follows the noun, as: *Main ne ek ādmī ko soyā hū,ā āckhā*, 'I saw a man' asleep,' but *Main ne ek soye hū,e<sup>2</sup> ādmī ko dekhā*, 'I saw a sleeping man.'

6. (a) Men. *Is men main ne barī fikr kī*, 'I thought a great deal about concerning this.' *Is bāt men (or par) kyā kahte ho?* 'what have you to say on this subject?' *Mantiq men*, 'on Logic.' *Yih ṭattū kitne men parā?* 'how much did this pony cost?' *Kan-kawwe men tāgā bāndho*, 'tie the thread to the kite.' *Dol men (or se) rassī bāndho* or *rassī men (or se) dol bāndho*, 'tie the rope to the bucket.' *Chor-kāntē kapre men (or se) lag-ga,e.* 'burrs have stuck to the cloth.'

(b) *Wuh ghusse men (or se) bhar-gayā*, 'he was filled with anger.' *Wuh nasha men (or se) chūr hai*, 'he is dead drunk' (chūr lit. = bruised). *Merī ghari men (not se) do bajkar das minut hū,e hain*, 'by my watch it is ten past 2.'

(c) *Vide 7 infra.*

7. (a) *Se* is sometimes used for *ke sāth*: *Makkhan roṭī se (or ke sāth) khātā hai*, 'he eats butter with his bread.' *Us ko mujh se (or mere sāth) dushmanī hai*, 'he is at enmity with me.' *Wuh bare sāz o sāmān se (or ke sāth) āyā*, 'he came with great pomp.' You could not, however, say *Wuh us se āyā*, 'he came with him.'

(b) *Main dāk se āyā hūn* is modern and borrowed from the English, for the old Urdu *dāk par āyā hūn*.

(c) *Yih is se mushābih hai*, 'this resembles that,' and *Donon men mushābahat hai*, 'there is a resemblance between the two,' are correct. By a confusion of thought, however, *Is se aur us se kyā mushābahat hai?* is incorrectly said for *Is men aur us men kyā mushābahat hai?*

<sup>1</sup> But *main ne ek sher* (without *ko*) *soyā hū,ā dekha*; *vide H.S.S.*

(d) For *se* or *ko* after *kahnā* and *pūchhnā*, *vide* XX and XXX.

(e) *Se* is generally used with causals.

(f) For omission of *se* after *salāmat* and *hāth*, *vide* II, 4, 6.

(g) *Men se* and *men kā* = 'out of', 'a portion of', as: *Un qaidiyon men se* (or *men ke*) *do rihā kar-diye ga,e*, 'two of those prisoners were released; ' *Un quaidiyon men se* (or *men kā*) *ek main thā*; but *Sab barādaron men* (not *men se*) *main (sab se) chhotā hūn*, 'I am the youngest of (amongst) the brothers.'

• For two postpositions following the same substantive, *vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 30, c.

8. (a) *Par* is connected with *upar*. It has many significations, such as superiority, incumbency, debt, duty, etc. Example: *Main is chīz ko us par tarjīh detā hūn*, 'I prefer this to that.'

(b) 'Because of,' 'for.' *Kis qusūr par*, 'for what fault?' *Wuh chorī karne par jawāb pā-gayā*, 'he was dismissed for theft.'

(c) 'According to.' *Munāsib ȳaur par*, 'in, or after, a proper manner:' *Mere mā'mūl par*, 'according to my custom.'

(d) 'Notwithstanding.' *Itnī dīwānagī par bhī wuh merī bāt samajh-gayā*, 'notwithstanding his madness he understood me;' *Merī maujūdgī par bhī wuh upnī sharārat se bāz na-āyā*, 'notwithstanding my presence he did not cease his mischief.'

(e) 'To,' 'for,' and 'at'. *Mujh bechāre par jo guzrā*, 'what happened to unfortunate me;' *Mere jāne par rāzī hū,a*, 'he consented to my going;' *Yih aur kisi (or kisi aur) par na-khulā*, 'this was revealed to none;' *Jis chīz par terā-jī chale so khā*, 'eat whatever you like;' *Ko,ī ek kos par*, 'at the distance of about a *kos*'.

(f) The *par* (like *men*) is often idiomatically omitted, as: *Wuh daryā ke kināre gayā*, 'he has gone to the river,' but *Daryā ke kinare par gayā*, 'he went to the edge of the water'; *Dūsre din (par)*, 'on the second day.'

9. *Tak* is not always a postposition; *vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 30, d.

#### IV. NUMERALS

1. (a) After *donon*, 'both'; *chāron*, 'all four,' etc., a plural noun is ordinarily to be preferred to the singular, as *donon darakhton men*, *chāron mulkon men*; but the singular may be used.

(b) If, however, some special number is always associated with a particular noun, the singular is preferred, as: *Sāthon iqālīm men*, 'in the seven continents of the world.' In *pānchon hawāss*, 'the five senses,' *hawāss* is the Arabic plural; this word, however, is in Urdu often treated as a singular. *Chāron 'unṣor* (or *erbu'a anāṣir*), 'the four elements.'

(c) *Ek* is often used for the indefinite article 'a'. It is, however, often emphatic, as: *Wuh chor hai*, 'he is a thief,' but *Wuh ek chor hai*, 'he is one thief,' i.e. 'he is a regular thief'; *Choron men se hai*, 'he is a thief,' i.e. 'belongs to the class of thieves', but *Choron men se ek wuh hai*, 'he too is one of the thieves' (don't make any mistake about the matter).'

#### V. ADJECTIVES

##### 'ENOUGH' AND 'Too MUCH'

1. 'Enough' can be rendered by *bahut*, *kāfī*, or *bas*, as: *Itni sharūb bahut* (or *kāfī* or *bas*) *hai*.

2. 'Too much' is expressed by *bahut*, *ziyāda*, *bahut ziyāda*, or by *hājat se ziyāda*, 'more than the requirements': *Yih jutā mere pāon se (bahut) barā hai*, 'these shoes are too big for me.'

*Vide also* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 2, a.

3. For *salāmat* and *sahīl salāmat*, *vide* II, 4.

#### VI. PRONOUNS

##### PERSONAL, DEMONSTRATIVE, INDEFINITE, AND POSSESSIVE

1. *Personal.* (a) In Delhi and Lucknow, and in Behar, the 1st person plural pronoun *ham*, 'we' or 'I', is both in

literary and spoken Urdu always masculine. Hindu ladies of Benares also use *ham* as masculine.

The following examples, in which a woman is the speaker, are from the 'Diwān-i Jān Shāhib' of Lucknow; the poem is written in the language of the *zānāna* :—

(a) ای دوگانہ<sup>۱</sup> خدا خدا کرکے \* رات کوکل محل سے ہم نکلے  
 ان مردوں<sup>۲</sup> سے جیتے جی دبنتے کے ہم نہیں  
 باجی فرشتہ خاں سے کریں یہ کلام ہم

'O Friend ! with difficulty I got out of the Palace last night ;  
 I am not, while alive, to be "sat upon" by men ;  
 Yes, sister, I would say this even to Mr. Death-Angel.'

(b) جب، اوہی ! اپنا کر چکے بدنام نام ہم  
 اپ کہتے ہو کہ "تجھے سی نہیں رکھتے کام ہم"

'Ah ! when I've disgraced my name for your sake  
 Do you tell me you'll have nothing to do with me ? '

For further examples *vide* the *marṣīyas* of Anīs and Dabīr, of Lucknow, and the *maṣnavī* of Mir Ḥasan, of Delhi ; and also the 'Sūra-yi Yūsuf' in the Urdu translation of the Qurān by Shāh Rafī' ud-Dīn, Shāh 'Abdu'l-Qādir, and Shamsu'l-'Ulamā' Maulavī Nazīr Ahmad, all of Delhi<sup>۳</sup> ; the first two are old and the last modern. The Urdu grammarian Mirzā Nisār 'Alī Beg, not an acknowledged authority, has made *ham* common gender, and so English grammarians have followed suit. In the Panjab, however, *ham* is feminine as well as masculine.

(b) Speak of yourself as *ham* and address servants as *tum*. Address *safed-posh* natives, superior shopkeepers, assistant station-masters, etc., as *Āp* followed by a plural verb.

<sup>1</sup> دوگانہ (properly two inseparable companions) is a woman's word.

<sup>2</sup> مردوں, a woman's word for *مرد*.

<sup>3</sup> اوہی, *nīhī*, is a woman's exclamation.

<sup>4</sup> تیرون میں اتنا نہ ہو تو حفا \* چلے ہم یا جا تیرا ہو یا

Gentlemen of Lucknow and Delhi, however, generally speak of themselves as *main* even when they address servants as *tū*.

2. *Demonstrative.* (a) *Yih* means 'he' just as much as *wuh* does. *Yih achchhā ādmī hai* and *wuh achchhā ādmī hai* must both be translated 'he is a good fellow'; but the former indicates either a person present or one near the speaker, while the latter either a person absent or one remote from the speaker.

(b) The demonstratives *yih* and *wuh*, preceding or following some interrogatives, are equivalent to a relative in English or in Hindustani, as : 'What is this dispute that is going on amongst the servants ?' *naukaron men yih kaisā jhagrā ho rukhā hai*? 'Who is that sawar who is riding along there ?' *wuh kaun sawār ghore par jā-rahā hai*? = *wuh kaun sawār hai jo ghore par jā-rahā hai*?

(c) For the demonstrative before a relative pronoun *vide* VII. 3, 4.

3. *Indefinite.* The pronoun *ko* has sometimes the meaning of *kahīn*, *vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones,' Lesson 4, p. 23.

4. *Possessive.* (a) *Apnā* does not, of course, always refer to the grammatical or to the logical subjects of a sentence (*vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 12). Note the position of this possessive in the following, and the differences in signification : *Usne apne bāp ke sāth unko jangal men jāte dekhā*, 'he saw them going with his own father into the jungle ;' *Usne unko apne bāp ke sāth jangal men jāte dekhā*, 'he saw them going with their own father into the jungle.'

(b) In *Main ne unko apne ghar bhej-diyā*, it is obvious that the possessive cannot refer to the singular subject; but *Unhon ne unko apne apne ghar bhej-diyā* would be ambiguous, as the possessive might refer either to the subject or the object.

(c) In *Yih apnī kitāb hai*, 'this is my book' (or, in the Panjab and in Behar, *yih merī apnī kitāb hai*) the *apnī* is used for emphasis.

(d) *Apnā* should not be inserted except for emphasis: *Main*

*ne usko hāth se mārā*, 'I beat him with (my) hand,' but *apne hāth se mārā*, 'I beat him with *my own* hand,' i.e. 'I beat him *myself*, no one else did'.

REMARK.—*Vide* also 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 12, *c* and *f*.

## VII. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AND ITS ANTECEDENT, AND THE NOMINATIVE ABSOLUTE

1. For the construction of relative sentences, *vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 16, *b*. The correlatives are less used in Urdu than in Hindi, but apart from this it is sometimes *necessary* to depart from the relative-correlative construction. There is, for instance, a considerable difference in meaning between *Usne apne dushman ko mār-dālā jisko mārnā usko hargiz lāzim na-thā* = 'he killed his enemy, and it was not necessary for him to do this', and *Jis dushman ko mārnā lāzim na-thā usko usne mārdālā* = 'he killed that particular enemy whom he ought not to have killed'. Sometimes the latter construction is adopted for reasons of euphony only; thus, *Jab tak jo log ki kāfir hon is mulk se chale na-jāen* is less euphonious than *Jab tak wuh log jo kāfir hain*.

2. When, in English, a noun in any case is the antecedent of a long and explanatory relative clause, it is, in Urdu, placed by itself at the commencement of the sentence as a nominative absolute, without any verb; but after the verb in the relative clause, its place is taken by a pronoun in the proper case of the antecedent, thus: 'The boy who came to you yesterday has to-day gone back to Lahore,' *larkā jo kal tumhāre pās āyā thā wuh āj Lāhor wāpas gayā*; 'Some one has sent for that boy whom you saw at my house yesterday,' *larkā jisko āp ne kal mere makān men dekhā thā us ko āj kisi ne bulā-bhejā hai*.

NOTE.—The nominative absolute construction, so common in Persian and Arabic, is not admissible in Urdu. Such a construction as معلم پشم توی کلاہش نیست, 'the schoolmaster

has no authority over the boys' (lit. 'the schoolmaster—there is no wool in his hat'), is foreign to the language, except, of course, in broken colloquial.

3. When, in English, one or more relative clauses are coupled by 'and', the succeeding relatives can, in Urdu, either be expressed, or their places can be taken by demonstrative pronouns; but the latter is more idiomatic. In 'The carpenter *who* made your table and *whose* wages you withheld, has come', *jis baṛhā, i ne Āp kī mez banā, i thi aur Āp ne (uski or jiski) muzdūrī nahīn dī thi wuh is waqt āyā*, the *uski* or *jiski* may optionally be omitted, as the sentence is short and the omission causes no ambiguity; but in 'The birdcatchers whom you sent to the jungle and who caught and brought you the bulbuls, want their recompense', *jin mir-shikaron ko Āp ne janqal men bhejā thā aur wuh (or, not so good, jo) bulbul phasā-kar lā,e the wuh in ām chāhtē hain*, if the *wuh* (or *jo*) were omitted, *Āp* would naturally be taken as the subject of the second clause as well as of the first.

4. For the sake of emphasis, the antecedent of a relative is often qualified by *aisā*, or, less commonly, by *wuh*, as *Mujh ko ek-aisā* (or *wuh*) *kāghaz chāhiye jis par kuchh likhā hū,ā na-ho*, 'I want paper that has not been written on'; in this sentence the *aisā* (or *wuh*) could be omitted, but it is better inserted; but in *Wuh* (or *aisā*) *kām karo jis se sānp bhī mare aur lāṭhī bhī na-tūte* (proverb), 'act so that the snake may be killed, but the *lāṭhī* be not broken,' either *wuh* or *aisā* must be inserted. Similarly, in 'The man whom you summoned has come', *wuh ādmī jisko Āp ne bulāyā thā hāzir hai*, the *wuh* cannot be omitted, as the reference is to 'that particular man'; the omission of *wuh* in such cases is a usual mistake amongst Europeans.

5. The relative pronoun in English is sometimes a source of ambiguity, as it is not always clear whether the writer uses the pronoun restrictively or conjunctively. Abbott in 'How to Write clearly' gives the following example: 'There was

a public-house next door, which was a great nuisance.' As 'which' is here preceded by a comma, it is conjunctive, and means 'and this fact'. Omit the comma (also, better still, substitute 'that' for 'which') and the meaning is 'that particular public-house was a great nuisance'. The Urdu, *Mere makān ke baghal men ek sharāb-khāna hai jo ek taklīf-dih chīz hai*, is ambiguous, as the relative *jo* may be either conjunctive or restrictive. Substitute for *jo* either *aur wuh sharāb-khāna* or else *aur us kā honā*, and the ambiguity disappears.

In *Wuh das kos do ghantē ke 'arṣe men paidal gayā jo ta'ajjub kī bāt thi*, 'he travelled 10 *kos* in the space of two hours, which was an extraordinary thing,' the relative is simply awkward; either substitute *aur yih* for the relative, or, better still, recast the sentence and write *yih ta'ajjub kī bāt thi ki wuh*—.

6. Note the ambiguity in the following: *Main to yahān ke rakhne-wālon se nahīn hūn jaisā ki tum taṣawwur karte ho*. This may either mean 'you think I am one of the residents' or 'you think I am not': but transfer the words *nahīn hūn* to the end of the sentence and the meaning is 'I am not one of the residents of this place as you think I am'.

7. To avoid ambiguity it is sometimes necessary to repeat the antecedent in a new form. 'He said he would not even hear me, *which* I confess I had expected.' This may either mean 'I had expected he would hear me' or 'I had expected he would not hear me'. For '*which*' write 'a refusal that' or 'a favour that', according to the sense.

*Us ne kahā ki main tumhārī bāt na-sunīngā aur mujh ko us se isi bāt kī tawaqqū' thi* is ambiguous; but write *lekin mujhe tawaqqū' thi ki wuh sunegā* or *lekin mujhe tawaqqū' bhī yihī thi ki wuh na-sunegā*, and the ambiguity is removed.

8. When the antecedent to a relative is indefinite, the relative is usually followed by the Aorist or by a Doubtful Tense, as: 'Is there anyone here that knows Turki?' *yahān*

*ko,ī hai jo Turkī jantā ho?*; 'There was no one there who could understand English,' *wāhan ko,ī aīsā shakk̄s na-thā jo Angrezī samajh-sake*, but here, however, the Imperfect *samajh-saktiā [thā]* would be better. In *Wih us īnt̄ kī tarah dawrā phirtā hai jisko muhār na-ho*, 'he wanders hither and thither like a camel without a nose-string,' *ho*, and not *hai*, is used because no one particular camel is intended.

9. For the relative as both subject and object in the same sentence, *vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 27, *j*.

### VIII. CONJUNCTIONS, ADVERBS, AND ADVERBIAL PHRASES AND PARTICLES

1. The following idiomatic use of *ki* was omitted from 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 26, *e*: *Tum khud wahān kyāñ nahīñ jāt̄e ki* (or *jo*) *mujh ko wahān jānc kahte ho?* 'why don't you go yourself instead of sending me?'

2. 'While' should sometimes be rendered by *yāñ to*, as: 'While all women are beautiful those of Kashmir are peculiarly so,' *yāñ to tamām hī auraten khūb-ṣūrat hotī hain<sup>1</sup>* *lekin khāss-kar Kashmir ki auraten to nihāyat hī hasīn hotī hain<sup>1</sup>*.

3. (a) Note the 'aur of concomitance' in the following: *Faqat̄ yih chār din hain; in ke ba'd ham honge aur qabr*, 'there are only these few days of life; then I, and the grave.'

(b) *Aur* sometimes = 'but': *Agar tum imtiḥān 'pās' ho-jā, oge to tumhen in'ām milēgā aur agar 'fel' ho-jā, oge to sazā pā, oge*, 'if you pass your examination you'll be rewarded, but if you fail you'll be punished.'

4. In such phrases as 'I do not know if—', 'I should not wonder if—', *agar* cannot be used: '*Ajab kyā hai ki fareb diyā ho tāki tujh<sup>2</sup> se apnā kām nikāle*', 'I should not wonder if he has deceived you<sup>2</sup> in order to gain his object through you.'<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Hotī hain* and not *haiñ*, *vide* H.S.S., 1, *g*.

<sup>2</sup> Note the position of *tujhe* in the second clause. It could follow *ki* and be omitted in the second clause.

5. (a) *Chāhe*, *kyā*, *khiwāh* repeated = 'either (or whether) or': *Chāho* has also the same meaning, but can be used only when the subject is the 2nd person plural, as: *Main nahīn kahtā, raho chāho ja,o*, 'I say nothing, remain or go as you please;' *Chāho raho chāho jā,o*, 'either stay or go, as you please.' *Vide* also 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 16, e and f.

(b) *Chāhe*—*chāhe* is alternative; *kyā*—*kyā* is inclusive: *Kyā amīr kyā gharīb sab uskī maut par rote hain*, 'whether rich or poor, all lament his death;' to substitute *chāhe* for *kyā* in this sentence would be incorrect and vulgar; but *Chāhe Hindū ho chāhe Musalmān main us se mulāqāt nahīn karūngā*, 'whether he be Hindu or Muslim, I won't meet him.'

NOTE.—For 'neither—nor' *vide* Negatives, 'Hindustani Stepping Stones,' Lesson 16, d.

6. (a) *Jahān* sometimes means 'when', as: *Jahān us ne mujhe dekhā jān chhor-kar bhāgā*, 'when he saw me he fled in haste'; *Jahān tum bahut baras zā,i kar-chuke ho chand din aur sahī*, 'when you have wasted so many years already, a few days more won't signify'; *Jahān ek hālat sālhā-sāl tak rahī* (*go wuh hālat kaisī hī umda aur pasandīda kyūn ha-ho*) *khiwāh ma-khiwāh ādmī us se uktā-jātā hai*, 'when one state continues without change for years (no matter how pleasant that state) a man gets tired of it.'

(b) *Jahān*, 'where,' and *jahān*, 'the world.' Though spelt alike, these two words differ in pronunciation: *jahān*, 'where,' has a nasal *n*, while *jahān*, 'the world,' has not. All the Hindi adverbs, *kahān*, *yahān*, *wahān*, *tahān*, have a *nān-i ghunna* or nasal *n*.

7. Note the use of *kahān* in *Ab hayāt 'umr bayhātā hai, lekin itnā shirin kahān hogā?*

8. *Kahīn* not only means 'I fear lest' (*vide* Lesson 16, a) but 'never', etc., as: *Kahīn yih tumhāre khiyāl men na-āwe ki main us par āshiq hūn*, 'do not for a moment suppose that I am in love with her'; *Kahīn dīwālī kī tā'īl tak*

*naubat na-pahunch-jā,e*, 'I fear lest the matter be prolonged till the Diwali holidays.'

9. *Kabhī*, 'ever,' and *kabhī nahīn* or *hargiz nahīn*, 'never.' *Hargiz*, however, cannot in *Urdu* be used for 'ever'.

10. For *jab tak*, 'until,' *vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lessons 18, b, and 31.

11. *Nahīn to* and 'otherwise'. Though 'otherwise' is to be translated by *nahīn to* H., or *warna P.*, still these latter words cannot always be translated by 'otherwise'. *Āp hī hain jo wa'don ko hamesha pūrā karte hain, warna āj kal wa'don kī kaun parvā kārtā hai?* 'you alone keep your promises; for in these days, who cares for promises?': here *warna* signifies 'were I to say otherwise, then tell me who . . .' *Agar āp kā qat'i hukm hai to main karūngā warna main ma'zūr hūn*, 'if it is your strict order I'll do it, but to say the truth I am to be excused:' *warna* here = *warna main is kām ko nahīn kartā is liye ki main ma'zūr hūn*, or some such equivalent phrase. *Jo kuchh mušībat insān ko pahunchtī hai wuh us ke gunāhon ke sabab se pahunchtī hai, warna Khudā kisi par zulm nahīn kartā* = 'misfortunes that befall a man are due to his sins, for indeed God oppresses none': *warna* here signifies 'if you say otherwise, then I say that . . .'

*Wa-illa* is old Urdu and has the same signification. In poetry especially, *warna*, etc., is a great stumbling-block:

12. *Bāre* and *ākhīr ko*, 'at last.' Though *bāre* and *ākhīr ko* both mean 'at last', the former has a restricted use, the latter a general: *bāre* can be used only when the clause expresses something favourable. 'At last my brother died' is *ākhīr ko* (not *bāre*) *merā bhāī mar-gayā*; but 'At last my brother recovered' could be *bāre*, or *ākhīr, ko*, *merā bhāī bimārī se achchhā ho-gayā*. Similarly, *bāre* (or *ākhīr, ko*) *wuh rāzī hū,a*, 'at last he consented.'

13. Correlatives: 'as'; 'the more — the less,' etc.; 'hardly,' 'scarcely,' 'almost,' 'to be about to'; 'no matter how:' 'as soon as'; 'not only—but also'; 'rather than.'

(a) The correlatives are much less used in Urdu than in Hindi: *Vide 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 25.*

'As,' 'as by degrees,' is in Delhi *jon jon* (or old *jyon jyon*<sup>1</sup>), and in Lucknow *jo jo*; while *jaise jaise* is common to both.

The correlative for the first is *ton ton* (or old *tyon tyon*). For *jo jo* there is no correlative. For *jaise jaise* the correlative is *waise waise*, or in old Urdu *taise taise*. 'As (or the more) he was treated, the worse he became,' *jyon jyon* (or *jaisc jaise* or *jo jo*) *uskā ilāj hotā gayā ton ton* (or *waise waise*) *ūskī bimari barkhī ga,i*; *Jo jo wuh māldār hotā gayā* (no correlative) *wuh ziyāda maghrūr hū,ā*, 'the richer he got the prouder he became.'

'*Marīz-i ishq par rahmat Khudā kī  
Marē barkhātā gayā jyon jyon dawā kī.*'

MŪ,MIN.

'God's pity on one sick of love,  
The disease got worse the more it was treated.'

(b) For 'the more . . . the more (or the less)', etc., *vide 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 25.*

(c) '—how much the more—' is expressed as follows: 'If coffee makes you drunk how much the more will wine do so?' (1) *jab<sup>2</sup> qahwa se tumhen nashā ho-jātā hai to sharāb se* (or *na-jāne sharāb se*) *kyā hālat hotī hogī?* (2) —*to sharāb kā hāl ma'lūm?* (3) —*to sharāb to sharāb hī hai?* (4) —*to sharāb kā kyā pūchhnā hai?* (or *to sharāb kā to kuchh pūchhnā hī nahīn*); (5) —*to sharāb kā to Khudā hī hāfiẓ hai* (or *to sharāb kā hal Khudā hī ko ma'lūm hai*); (6) —*to sharāb se kyā kahnā?* (7) —*to sharāb kyā karegī?* (8) —*to sharāb kā kyā thikānā?*

(d) 'How much less' is expressed as follows: 'If wine does not make you drunk how much less will coffee do so?' *jab sharāb se tumhen nashā nahin hotā to 'kāfī' se kab hogā?* or —*to 'kāfī' se honā ma'lūm*, or —*to 'kāfī' se ho-chukā*;

<sup>1</sup> Vulgarly *jūn, jyūn.*

<sup>2</sup> Or *agar.*

'I would not do this for a friend, much less for an enemy,'  
*main doston ke liye to aisā karūn-hī-gā nahīn dushmanon ke*  
*liye kahān tak karūngā?* or —*dushmanon ke liye karnā*  
*ma'lūm,* or —*dushman ko kaun pūchhtā hai?*

(e) — much less, to say nothing of, let alone —.  
 'I have never even heard the name of the place, much less  
 seen it, to say nothing of never having seen it,' *main ne us*  
*jagah kā nām bhī nahīn sunā hai dekhne kā kyā zikr,* or  
*dekhna to ma'lūm,* or *dekhna to dar kinār hai = us jagah kā*  
*dekhna dar kinār main ne nām bhī nahīn sunā.*

NOTE.—For *bhī* in correlative sentences, vide 14.

(f) 'Hardly,' 'scarcely,' etc. Vide also H.S.S., Lesson 25.  
 I had barely set foot outside Main ne kamre se bāhar qadam  
 the room when— na-rakhā thā ki chhat gir-  
 ga,ī (or gir-parī); or main  
 kamre se qadam bāhar  
 rakhnē na-pāyā thā ki—.

Wuh ādhā mīl na-gayā hogā  
 ki ek dākū ne us par hamla  
 kiyā; or wuh shāyad hū ek  
 mīl gayā hogā ki—.

He could scarcely have pro-  
 ceeded half a mile when he  
 was attacked by a robber.

(g) 'Nearly,' 'almost':—  
 I have nearly finished.

He nearly fell off his horse;  
 (lit. 'it was near that he  
 should fall off his horse').  
 It is nearly twelve.

Mere kām men kuchh thorā sā  
 bāqī hai; or mujhe kuchh  
 thorā sā kāni bāqī hai.

Wuh ghore par se girte girte  
 bach-gayā; or qarib thā  
 (ki) ghore par se gir-jā,e.

Thorī der men bārah bajenge;  
 or bārah bajne men thorī  
 der bāqī hai; or bārah abhī  
 bajenge; or bārah bajne  
 chāhte hain; or bārah baj-  
 chale.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For this use of *chalnā*, vide X, 1, c.

(h) 'To be about to—.' *Vide* also 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lessons 25 and 29, *a*, and XLII, 7, and XLV, 4.

When the old king was about *Jab bādshāh marne-lagā—*  
to die he—

I was just going to get into *Main sawār hone hī ko thā ki*  
the train when it started. *rel chal-parī.*

I was on the point of falling *Main girne hī ko thā ki us ne*  
when he saved me. *mujhe sanbhāl-liyā.*

(i) For 'no matter how', 'as soon as', 'no sooner than', 'not only—but also', and 'rather than', *vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 25, *b*, *h*, *j*, and *k*, and XLVII, 3.

14. *Nīz* and *bhī*, 'also.' (a) *Bhī* must immediately follow the word it refers to; unlike *nīz*, it cannot commence a clause.

(b) *Bhī* is often required where in English 'also' cannot be used, as: *Apne māl se kuchh saqīron ko bhī khairāt karo*, 'give the poor (also) some of the property you possess;' here *bhī* signifies that 'as you possess some let the poor *also* possess some'. *Us ke sāth mujhe bhī bhej-do* is either 'send me with him'; or if anyone else were being sent, 'send me *also* with him.'

*Bhī* is often used where in English 'also', though omitted, might be inserted, as: *Ātc ke sāth ghun bhī pistā hai* (proverb), 'the weevil is ground with the grain.'

(c) It is used in boastful or pretentious phrases, as: *Wuh dil men khīyāl kartā hai ki main bhī kuchh hūn*, 'he fancies himself somebody'; *Tum bhī ek 'ajīb ādmī ho*, 'you're a wonderful person' (generally satirically); *Dunyā bhī ek 'ajīb jagah hai*, 'this world is a wonderful place.' There is no idea of 'also' in any of these phrases.

(d) It is also idiomatic to add it in correlative sentences, though it can be omitted: *Wuh jahān jātā hai wāhān uskā kuttā (bhī) jātā hai*, 'where he goes, there goes his dog also'; *Jo tum karoge main (bhī) karūngā*:

(e) With a simple verb, *bhī* may close a sentence, as: *Main ne us kamān ko sirf jhukāyā hī nahīn balki torā bhī*, 'I did not merely bend the bow, I broke it.'

(f) If, however, the verb be a compound (either of two verbs or of a simple verb with a substantive, or adjective, etc.) the *bhī* must be inserted between the compounds; thus, if in the previous example *tor-dālā* be substituted for *torā*, the sentence must run —*balki tor bhī dālā*. Similarly, —*balki 'arz bhī kiyā*, and not '*arz kiyā bhī*'.

NOTE.—The particle *hī* (q.v.) is also governed by similar rules.

(g) In correlatives or in conditional sentences *bhī* refers to the emphatic word in the clause, as: *Agar tum mere hān ā, oge to main tumhāre hān bhī ā, ūngā*,<sup>1</sup> 'if you'll come to see me, I'll go to see you:' *Agar tum mere hān ā, oge to main bhī tumhāre hān ā, ūngā*, 'if you will come to see me, I'll go to see you.'

(h) For 'he said also' English people usually say *us ne bhī kahā*; this should be *us ne yih bhī kahā*, for the former means 'he too, said'.

15. *Hī*. (a) The emphatic particle *hī* can be added for emphasis to any part of speech; it is also equivalent to italics in English or to underlining. For numerous examples of its force *vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 25, *m.* Further examples are: *Main ne kisi ko gāte sunā*. *Main hī gātā thā*, 'I heard some one singing. Yes, it was I that was singing;' *Utnā hī* (= *usī qadar*), 'just as much,' 'exactly as much;' *Main is bāt ko bhūl hī gayā thā*, 'I quite forgot it;' *Is zillat kī zindagī se to, tumhārā marnā hī achchhā thā*, 'why, dying would be preferable to living in such misery.'

(b) *Hī* is sometimes used for *bhī*, 'even': *Wuh aisā buzurg shakhs hai ki agar tumhen uskī hawā hī* (or *bhī*) *lag-jā,e to*

<sup>1</sup> Speaking to a person *jā, ūngā* would be preferred; but in writing *ā, ūngā*, as the person addressed is in his house.

*tum ādmī ban-jā,o* (or *jā,oge*), 'so saint-like is he that even his passing contact would make you good.'

(c) *Hī* also expresses contempt: *Yih kitāb bhī kyā chīz hai*, 'what sort of a thing is this book?' (surprise or admiration); but *Yih kitāb chīz hī kyā hai*, 'what worth has this wretched book got?'

(d) When *hī* emphasizes a future, it should (unlike *bhī*) be inserted before the future suffix, as: *Main is kām ko karūn-hī-gā nahīn*<sup>1</sup> (but *karūngā bhī nahīn*), 'I will never do this.'

(e) In compound verbs *hī* follows the rule of *bhī*, thus: *Bhūl hī gayā*, 'I forgot it altogether;' —*lekin main ne 'arz hī kiyā*, '—but I insisted on making a petition,' 'I did make a petition;' *Main ne bāhir hī wālon ko dekhā*, 'I saw only those outside.'

(f) Note the position of the emphatic particle *hī* in the following: *Yih kām mujh se ho-hī-gā nahīn*, 'this business can in no way be done by me;' here *hī* qualifies the verb and could occur in no other position in the sentence. *Tum jānte hī the ki wuh nahīn ā,egā*, 'you certainly knew that he would not come.'

16. *The particle 'to'.* (a) *To* means 'certainly', 'I admit', 'of course', 'as for', 'just'; and like *bhī* it follows the word it refers to. Examples—

- (1) *He, I admit, obeys me, Wuh to merā hukm māntā hai,*  
but the other servants *lekin dūsre naukar nahīn mānte.*
- (2) *He obeys me, of course, Wuh merā hukm to māntā hai,*  
but not my brother. *lekin mere bhā,ī kā hukm nahīn māntā.*
- (3) *He obeys me, of course, Wuh merā hukm māntā to<sup>2</sup> hai, lekin—*

<sup>1</sup> *Karūngā hī nahīn* in the Panjab. Similarly, for *usī kā* Panjabis say *us kā hī*.

<sup>2</sup> Future, *karūngā to nahīn*, etc.; *to* cannot be inserted before the future suffix, as *hī* can.

(b) If the particle would ordinarily occur as the last word of the clause, the word *sahī* must be added; thus the last sentence could be rendered, *Wuh merā hukm māntā hai to sahī, lekin*—.

(c) To also expresses contrast, as: *Qaidiyon men das to mard hain aur bāqī 'auraten*, 'of the prisoners, ten are men, the rest women;' *Din ko to garmī partī hai aur rāt ko sardī*, 'by day it is hot, but at night cool;' *Main to jātā hūn tum chāho jā,o chaho na-jā,o*, 'as for me, I'm going; you may go or not, as you please.'

(d) To also indicates an admitted fact, as: *Fulān shakhs mujh se jhūjh bola*. *Wuh jhūjha to hai*, 'so-and-so lied to me, he is known to be a liar' ('he is an admitted liar,' or 'of course he is a liar').

(e) With the imperative, *to* is equivalent to the English adverbial 'just', as: *Is dawā ko khā to lo, phir dekhnā ki iskā kyā aśar hotā hai*, 'just take this medicine and then see its effects;' *Yih zahr nahīn hai; khā to lo*, 'this is not poison; just swallow it and see.'

(f) Interrogatively, *to* expresses a modicum of doubt, as: *Āp achchhe to hain?* (= *Āp achchhe hain na?*), 'you are well, aren't you?' (i.e. 'I hope you are well').

(g) Similarly, *to nahīn* used interrogatively also expresses some doubt, but is equivalent to 'I hope you're not?' or to *mabādū*, as: *Āp bimār to nahīn hain*, 'you're not ill, I hope?' It would be incorrect to say *Āp achchhe to nahīn hain*, for that would imply that the speaker hoped he wasn't well.

(h) Note the following idioms:—

Not to speak of you, very *Tum to tum, bare bare 'ālim bhī*  
learned men even can't *is sawāl kā jawāb de nahīn*  
answer this. *sakte* (or *nahīn de-sakte*).

Setting aside wine, why, he *Sharāb to sharāb, wuh tam-*  
doesn't even smoke. *bākū tak nahīn pītā*.

17. *The Negative.* (a) The prohibitive *mat* is used only

with the Imperative, in all its forms; it either precedes or follows the verb, as *mat jā, iye*, *jā,o mat*, etc., but it generally precedes it. *Mat* is only used in commands, and the modern tendency is not to use it at all.

(b) *Na* and *nahīn* can be substituted for *mat* with the Imperatives, and *na* with the Infinitive when it is used as a future (or politely present) Imperative; but *nahīn* must follow the verb while *na* must precede it, as *na-jā,o* or *jā,o nahīn*, *na-jānā* or *jānā nahīn*.

(c) *Nahīn* alone, is used with the Present Tense, and with the Infinitive employed as in 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 15, d (*Ghorā us ko khinch nahīn sakne kā*); or when the substantive verb is understood, as, *Wuh yih kām kabhī nahīn kartā* (*hai* or *thā*); or for the adverbial 'no'.

(d) In other tenses either *na* or *nahīn* is used, but with the Past Conditional and the Aorist *na* is preferred. *Na-kartā* is Past Conditional, but *nahīn kartā* is Present Indicative.

(e) Note too the difference in signification of the following : *Main us ko bulātā thā magar wuh na-ātā thā*, 'I used to ask him to come and see me, but he would never come ;' but *wuh nahīn ātā thā*, 'he used not to come.'

(f) After verbs of doubt and fear *na* is preferred to *nahīn*, as : *Main ḍartā hūn ki wuh na-* (or *nahīn*) *āwegā*.

(g) Note the position of the negative in : *Wuh mar nahīn gayā* or *nahīn marā*, but not *nahīn mar-gayā*. *Ko, ī tadbīr na-ban-parī* or *ban-na-parī*.

(h) *Nahīn* only, and not *na*, can occur as a final word in a negative affirmative sentence, as : *Jā, ūngā nahīn* (not *na*), 'I won't go.'

(i) *Na* at the end of a sentence is interrogative, as : *Jā, oge na*, 'you will go, won't you ?' In such a sentence the voice is elevated at the end, and therefore *na* is, by many natives, in such cases, written *nā*.

; 'Neither . . . nor' is expressed by *na to . . . aur na*; or by *na . . . na*; or if there are three 'alternatives' by

*na to . . . na . . . aur na . . .* 'The first *na* can idiomatically be omitted in every case.

### IX. VERBS

1. (a) Sometimes, though a verb has more than one form, only one is in use; thus, *chaurā k.*, 'to widen,' is in common use, but *chaurānā* is never used. *Mukkī mārnā*, 'to strike with the fist,' is correct, but *mukhiyānā* is colloquial only.

(b) After kings and governors, causal verbs are used, except when the verb is 'to confiscate'; for obvious reasons say, *Badshāh ne māl zabit kar-liyā* (and not *karwāyā*).

(c) A few simple verbs are formed from Persian and Arabic roots; thus, from Arabic, *qabūlnā*, 'to accept'; *badalnā*, 'to change'; from Persian, *lharidnā*, 'to buy'; *bakhshnā*, 'to forgive'; *farmānā*, 'to order,' etc.

(d) For the agent case *ne* before certain verbs, *vide* Lesson III, 3.

2. *Compound Verbs and Negatives.* To the general rule that compounds of two verbs cannot be used in the negative (*vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 11, 1), there are four exceptions. In conditional sentences, before *balki*, and after *jab tak*, and in interrogative clauses, such compounds may be made negative: (1) *Agar tum is dūdh ko is waqt na-pi-jā, oge to bigar jā, egā*, 'if you don't drink up the milk now it will go bad'; but it would be incorrect to say in a simple sentence, *Wuh dūdh nahin pī-jā, egā* or *pī-na-jā, egā*. (2) *Main tumhārī kitāb khā-na-jā, īngā balki ek nāzar dekh-kar de-dūngā*, 'I won't eat your book, I'll merely glance at it and return it to you.' (3) *Jab tak ki main wāpas na-ā-jā, īngā tum yahān thahro*, 'stay here till I return' (i.e. 'as long as I do not come back, stay here'); *Jab tak ki main is kām ko kar na-dālūngā mujhe chain na-ā, egā*, 'until I do this I shan't rest.' (4) *Kyā tum mughe mār to na-baithogē*, 'what, are you going to beat me?—you look as if you were.'

The above rule holds good even if the conditional or the enhansive clause is understood, as : *Tum yih kitāb mujhe kyūn na-dete ? main use khā-na-jā,ūngā*; in this sentence either a conditional clause ('I won't eat it, if you lend it to me') or an enhansive clause ('—rather I will return it') is understood.

3. For the reason of such forms as *mārā-chāhtā hai, jāyā chāhtā hai*, etc., *vide* 'Essays on Bihārī Declension and Conjugation', by Dr. G. A. Grierson, C.I.E., Journ. Beng. As. Soc., 1883, vol. lii, pt. i, p. 156.

4. For verbs compounded with participles, *vide* XLI, 10, 11, and XLIX.

## X. ĀNĀ, JĀNĀ, AND CHALNĀ

1. (a) If a correspondent, say in Calcutta, were writing to some one, say in Lahore, to ask him when he was going to a certain place, he would, if the place were intermediate, use *ānā*, but if beyond, *jānā*, as : *Āp kab Jallandhar ā,enge ?* but *kab Peshāwar jā,enge ?* In writing to remote countries this rule is not observed. Thus, if writing to a friend in England, the idiom would be, *Āp kab Itāliya jā,enge*, not *ā,enge*, 'when will you go to Italy ?'

(b) *Main ek dost se milne gayā thā magar tifn sc pahle ghar wāpas āyā*, 'I went to see a friend, but I got home again before lunch' (said by one not at home); *āyā* is here used because *gayā* is used in the previous clause.

(c) For the use of *chalnā* in the sense of 'to begin', *vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 19, b (2) : *Tāqat ātī chalī hai*, 'his strength has begun to return.'

(d) *Kidhar jāte ho* (to a person on the move), or *kidhar chale* (to a person about to start) = 'where are you going alone ?'; but *Kidhar chalte ho*, 'where do you want to go with me ?'

(e) *Vide* also 'Hindustani' Stepping Stones', Lesson 19, b (1), for *chalnā*.

(f) If writing to a person to say you will go to his house, use *ānā*, but if speaking to him use *jānā*.

2. In the following, *jānā* is used for *chāhnā*: *Yih kām hū,ā-jātā hai, tum ghabrāte kyūn ho*, 'this will soon be finished; why are you so anxious?' : *hū,ā-jātā hai = hū,ā chāhtā hai*. In this sense, however, *jānā* can only be used for an event which is desired.

3. For *ānā* in compounds, vide 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 11, i.

4. For rare compounds with *jānā*, vide XLIX, 1 and 4.

### XI. BAJNĀ, BAITHNĀ

1. *Bajnā* is 'to sound, strike' (of bugle, bell, clock); 'to be struck' (song, drum); 'to be played upon' (drums, bugle, or any musical instrument). *Kitne bajे hain?*<sup>1</sup> 'what o'clock?' is literally 'how many hours have struck?' English people generally think *baje* is a noun.

2. For *baithnā*, vide XII, 10, and 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 11, g.

### XII. BANNĀ, BANĀNĀ

1. *Bannā* means 'to be repaired' as well as 'to be made'; but *marammat honā* is only 'to be repaired'. *Wuh bahut bantā hai* = 'he gives himself great airs'. *Merī us se na-banegī*, 'he and I won't hit it off together': *bāt* is understood.

2. *Banānā* also signifies 'to make' a person, as opposed to *bigārnā*, 'to mar' him.

3. Oh! *tum mujhe banātē ho* = 'ah! you're making a fool of me'; *Mujhe jhūtā banātē ho?* 'do you make me out a liar?'

<sup>1</sup> But *kitne bajे?* (without *hain*), 'how many did the clock strike?' 'how many has it just struck?' would be said by a person who heard the clock strike but did not count. *Kitne bajे?* is also an adverbial phrase, 'at what o'clock?'

XIII. *CHĀHNA*, 'TO WISH, LOVE,' ETC.; *CHUKNĀ*,  
 'TO FINISH'

1. For *chāhnā*, and *chāhiye*, *vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', and Lessons III, 3 (b), and XXXVIII, 1.
2. 'He ate his dinner and then finished his work' is, *Us ne khānā khāyā aur uske ba'd apnā kām (pūrā) kiyā* (not *āpnā kām kar-chukā*). The reason is that *chuknā* can only be used where the sentence is a simple one, or when in a compound sentence the action of the second verb is subsequent to the first, as: *Main khānā khā-chukā*, 'I have finished eating'; *Wuh khānā khā-chukā, uske ba'd usne apnā kām (pūrā) kiyā*.
3. The future of *chuknā* is often the equivalent of an English Perfect, *vide* XXXVII, 5.
4. For the Preterite used ironically for a negative Future, *vide* XLI, 7, Remark.

XIV. *CHHŪTNĀ* AND *BACHNĀ*

1. *Chhūtnā*, intr., and *chhornā*, tr., signify 'to be saved' or 'to escape', etc., but from a danger *that has arrived*.
2. *Bachnā*, intr., and *bachānā*, tr., are 'to escape from a threatened danger'.

XV. *DĀLNĀ* AND *DENĀ*: *DARNĀ*

1. Note that for 'to pour' the verb *dālnā* is generally used. It can be used either of liquids or solids. The proper word, however, for 'to pour' is *undelnā*.
2. *Denā*. For the Present and Imperfect of *denā*, *vide* XL, 6, and for its signification in compounds, etc., *vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 11, a-c.
3. For rare compounds of inflected past participles with *dālnā*, *denā*, and *lenā*, *vide* XLIX, 1-3.
4. For *darnā* and *dar-lagnā*, *vide* XLVII, 12.

XVI. *DEKHNĀ* AND *PARHNĀ*

1. (a) As in English, *dekhnā* is also used of mental perception. The interjection *dekho* is used to warn or to lay

stress on a point to be observed, as : *Dekho ! bābū ke siwā aur kisi ke hāth men na-denā*, 'be careful to see you don't give this to anyone but the *bābū*.'

NOTE.—To attract attention, *suno* or *suniye* ('hie!' 'look here !') is used, and not *dekho*.

(b) To read quietly to oneself is *kitāb dekhnā* (though *parhnā* in this sense is not now absolutely wrong); but to read aloud to oneself is *kitōb parhnā*.

(c) For *dekhiye*, vide XXXVI, 10, and XXXVIII, 1.

2. For studying a lesson in preparation, *parhnā* only is used. The primary idea of *parhnā* is repeating aloud; thus, *namāz parhnā*, to say the fixed Muslim prayers, but *kisi ke liye du'ā māngnā* (or *karnā*), 'to pray for some one,'<sup>1</sup> and *du'ā denā*,<sup>2</sup> 'to bless.'

### XVII. DIQQ AND DIQQ KARNA

As a substantive masculine, *diqq* means the chronic fever that usually precedes consumption; but as an adjective it means 'bothered'. The idiom therefore is *diqq karnā*, 'to worry,' 'bother,' etc., and not, as English people say, *diqq denā*: say *main rāste men bahut diqq hū,ā* and not *mujhe bahut diqq milā*.

### XVIII. HONA AND HO-JĀNĀ

1. *Ho-gayā* more emphatically indicates change of state than does *hū,ā*, as : *Fataḥ 'Alī Shāh ke marne ke ba'd, uskā betā Muḥammad Shāh bādshāh hū,ā*; not *ho-gayā*, which would be wrong, as the succession was natural, or expected; but *Bādshāh ke marne ke ba'd uskā ghulām Kāfir bādshāh ho-gayā*. In the latter sentence *hū,ā* could be substituted, but would not be so forcible.

<sup>1</sup> But *tumhārī hayāt kī du'ā kartā hūn*, 'I pray for your life.'

<sup>2</sup> *Du'ā denā*, of men only; but 'God blessed him', *Khudā ne us par fazl kiya*. *Du'ā* is calling down a blessing from Heaven. *Du'ā parhnā* is to repeat a formula as a charm.

2. For the Future and Future Perfect of this verb, *vide* XXXVII, 7, 8.

3. (a) For the difference between *hai* and *hotā hai*, *vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 1, g.

(b) For the forms *hūn*, *vide* L, 1, Remark.

4. For *hokar*, 'although,' etc., *vide* XLVI, 13 (a), (b); for *hote*, *vide* XLVII, 15 (20).

### XIX. *JĀNNĀ* AND *SAMAJHNĀ*

*Jānnā* means 'to know', and also 'to suppose or think'; *samajhnā* means 'to understand', 'to think, suppose'; but not 'to know'.

*Jān-jānā* and *jān-lcnā* = 'I have found out', 'arrived at'.

The conjunctive participle of both these verbs signifies 'mistaking' as well as 'knowing'; thus, *main chor jān-kar* (or *samajhkār*) *us ke pīchhe dāurā* may mean either 'knowing him to be a thief' or 'mistaking him for a thief, I ran after him'. *Vide* also under XXXII, *Rakhnā*. For *kyā jāniye* and *na-jāniye*, *vide* XXXVIII, 1.

### XX. *KAHNĀ* WITH *SE* OR *KO*

1. *Kahnā* in the sense of 'say' or 'speak' requires *se*; but in the sense of 'to name a thing' or 'to order' it requires *ko*, as: *Us ne mujhe bāhir jāne ke liye* (or *bāhir jāne ko*) *kahā*, 'he ordered me to go out'; *Wuh mujhko chachā kahā-kartā hai*, 'he always calls me uncle (paternal)'; *Us ne mujhko be-wuqūf kahā*, 'he called me a fool.'

2. For *kyā kahiye*, *vide* XXXVIII, 1.

3. For the difference in signification between *bolnā* and *kahnā*, *vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 5, b, c.

### XXI. *KARNA*

1. (a) The verb *karnā* sometimes means 'to place', 'to send', 'to bring over', etc., as in—

(1) *Place him in the rear of Us ko 'lā,in' ke pīchhe kāro.*  
the line.

- (2) *Send* him with me. *Usko hamāre sāth karo* (or *kar-do*).  
 (3) *Turn* your face that way. *Munh us taraf karo.*  
 (4) The pleader spoke well and brought the jury over to his side. *Wakīl ne taqrīr karke ahl-i 'jūrī' ko apnī taraf kar-liyā.<sup>1</sup>*  
 (5) To consent; to say 'yes'. *Hān karnā* (or *kahnā*).  
 (6) The mother kept calling her son Hasan by name. *Mān ne Hasan Hasan karke apne bete ko pukārā* (or *pukārtī rahi*).  
 (7a) To applaud; to cry 'bravo!' *Shābāsh karnā* (or *kahnā*).  
 (7b) To call down a blessing on a great person. *Jai jai karnā.<sup>2</sup>*  
 (8) To adopt a son. *Betā karke pālnā.*  
 (b) *Vide also XXXII.*
2. For the idiomatic use of *karke*, *vide XLVI*, 12.

### XXII. *LAGNĀ* AND *SHURŪ' KARNA'*

1. The primary meaning of *lagnā* is 'to be in contact with', 'to stick to'. To the many idiomatic meanings of this verb illustrated in Lesson 9 of 'Hindustani Stepping Stones' are to be added those of sensation and seeming—

- This disgrace stuck to him *Yih bad-nāmī 'umr bhar ke līye usko lag-gā.*  
 This hat does not suit you. *Yih topī tumhen buri lagtī hai.*  
 He took what I said in ill part. *Meri bāt usko buri lagā.*  
 This coat suits you. *Yih kurtā tumhen achchhā lagtā hai.*  
 It tastes bitter. *Karwā lagtā hai.*  
 Whatever I say he takes ill. *Meri har bāt unkō karwī lagtī hai.*

<sup>1</sup> Note force of *-liyā*, *vide XXIII* and H.S.S., II, c (1) and (7).

<sup>2</sup> *Jai-jai-kār* (*pukārnā* or *karnā*) (H. subs. f.).

I feel cold.	<i>Jārā lagtā hai.</i>
He seems (either from his appearance or from what you say) to be your brother (also = 'he is your cousin').	<i>Yih ādmī tumhārā bhā,ī lagtā hai.</i>
He is my cousin.	<i>Merā bhā,ī lagtā hai.</i>
But—	
He is my brother.	<i>Merā bhā,ī hai (= haqīqī bhā,ī or sagā bhā,ī hai).</i>
This ointment burns, causes a burning sensation.	<i>Yih marham bahut lagtā hai.</i>

2. (a) In the sense of 'to begin' *lagnā* differs slightly from *shurū' karnā*, the former having a wider meaning.

*Shurū' karnā* emphasizes the commencement only of an act, as : *Main ne bolnā shurū' kiyā thā lekin usne mujhc rok-diyā*, 'I began to speak, but he stopped me ;' here the wider verb *lagnā* could be substituted.

(b) *Lagnā* also signifies 'to begin and to continue', and is consequently often idiomatically used in Urdu when 'to begin' could not be used in English, as : 'He laughed on seeing me, and said,' *wuh mujhe dekh-kar hansā aur kahne lagā* ; not *shurū' kiyā*, as the idea is that he began to say and continued to say.

3. *Lagnā* further means 'to begin' in the sense of 'to make ready for', as : *Wuh jāne lagā thā ki bīmār ho-gayā* (or *parā*), 'he was just going to start when he fell sick.'

4. *Lagnā*, 'to undertake.' In this sense the Preterite is used with a Future sense, and the Pluperfect with a Preterite sense, but only for interrogatives expressing strong dissent, as : *Main wahān kyūn jāne lagā*, 'why should I go there ?' *Main wahān kyūn jāne lagā thā*, 'why should I have gone there ?'

5. *Lagnā* after an Infinitive may supply the place of the Aorist or the Future, *vide XXXVII*, 6, or of the Past Conditional, *vide XLIV*, 3.

6. As *lagnā* also means 'to cohabit', Lucknow people avoid its use except in the sense of 'to begin'; thus a Lucknow gentleman would say, *Yih dawā karwī mā'lūm hotī hai*, instead of *lagtī hai*.

### XXIII. THE VERB *LENĀ*

1. In addition to those significations of *lenā* mentioned in Lesson 11, 'Hindustani Stepping Stones,' this verb sometimes indicates 'success after effort', as: *Main ne imtihān 'pās' kar-liyā* (or 'without effort', *kiyā*), 'I passed the examination'; *Main ne usko talāsh' kar-liyā*, 'I found it at last'; *Jis chīz ko main talāsh kartā thā ākhir pā-liyā*, 'I at last found what I was searching for.' In the last two examples *kiyā* and *pāyā*, if substituted, would have much the same signification; but *Main ne apnī kitāb us se māng-lī = . . . māng-kar li*; whereas *māngī* alone would mean 'asked for'.

2. For the signification of *lenā* in compounds, vide 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 11, b, c.

3. For rare compounds, XLIX, 1, 2.

### XXIV. *MĀNGNĀ* AND *CHĀHNĀ*

*Māgnā* means 'to beg', 'to ask for'; it does not mean 'to want', 'to desire', which is properly expressed by *chāhnā*. 'I want a horse' is not *main ek ghorā māngtā hūn*,<sup>2</sup> but —*chāhtā hūn*; but a servant might correctly say, *Sāhib ek piyālā chāe māngte hain*, 'the Sāhib wants (i.e. is asking for) a cup of tea.'

Muslims of Bengal and also servants of Englishmen do say, but incorrectly, *main jāne māngtā hūn* for *main jāne chāhtā hūn*, 'I want to go.' Avoid this vulgarity.

<sup>1</sup> *Talāsh k.*, 'to search for'; but *talāsh kar-lcnā*, 'to find after diligent search.'

<sup>2</sup> This would mean 'I am asking for a horse to be brought', while *māngtā hūn* would mean 'I am sending for a horse'.

## XXV. THE VERB *MARNA*

The past participle of *marna*, 'to die,' is *marā*; the old form *mū,ā* is now used only in abuse.

## XXVI. *MILNA* AND *MILĀNA*

1. With *ko*, this verb indicates accidental meeting; with *se*, intentional meeting and also joining; with *men*, absorption (of persons or things). Examples—

- (1) A sepoy of my regiment *Merī paltan kā ek sipāhī*  
deserted to the enemy. *dushman sc jā-milā.*
- (2) He turned himself into an Englishman (adopted  
Englishmen's habits). *Wuh Angrezon men mil-gayā.*
- (3) Mix flour with water. *Pānī men āṭā milā,o.*

2. *Vide* XLV, 5.

## XXVII. *PĀNĀ*

*Dekh-pānā* and *sun-pānā* are colloquial for *dekhne pānā* and *sunne pānā*.

## XXVIII. *LAUTNĀ. LOTNĀ, LŪTNĀ, ETC.*

*Lauṭnā* (لُوٹنَا), 'to turn back,' 'return,' is intransitive, and *lautnāñ* (لُوٹنَا), 'to send back,' 'to give back,' is transitive; but the latter is sometimes confounded with the intransitive *lauṭ-ānā* (لُوٹَنَا), which is the same as *lauṭnā* (لُوٹنَا).

*Loṭnā* (لُوتنَا), intransitive, is 'to roll', 'wallow', while *lūtnā* (لُوٹنَا), transitive, is 'to loot'.

## XXIX. *PARNĀ IN COMPOUNDS*

1. *Dekh-parnā* is an abbreviation of *dekhne men parnā*, and has the same signification as *dikhā,ī denā*; so, too, with *sun-parnā* and *samajh-parnā*.

2. *Parṇā* and *par-jānā* are sometimes idiomatically used

for honā and ho-jānā, as : Qahā-sālī parī (or hū,ī), 'there was a famine'; Uske dil men merī taraf se 'adāwat par-ga,ī (or ho-ga,ī), 'he has taken an active dislike to me.'

3. The perfect, parā hai, sometimes means 'at your disposal', as : Khelne ke liye sārā maidān parā hai, 'you have the whole maidān at your disposal to play in' (i.e. 'we don't use it').

4. Parñā in all its tenses may mean 'to lie in the way', as : Dillī jāne men, Patna rāste men parñā hai, 'Patna lies on one's way to Delhi.'

### XXX. PŪCHHNĀ

1. Pūchhnā, when it signifies 'to ask a question' or 'to say', requires se, as : Main ne us se uskā nām pūchhā, 'I asked him his name'; Main ne us se pūchhā ki tum ko kyā hū,ā? 'I said to him, "What has happened to you?"'

2. When it signifies 'to inquire for a person', it takes ko, as : Bare Sāhib āp ko pūchhte thē, 'the Bare Sāhib was asking after you (or for you).'

### XXXI. RAHNA

1. For hotā hai (vide 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 1, 9), rahtā hai is often substituted, as: Gadhe kī pīth har waqt bojh se dabī-rahtī hai (or hotī hai), 'the ass's back is never without a load'; Lālī bulbul ke wuh par jo dum ke niche rahte hain (or hote hain) lāl hote hain, 'the feathers that are under the tail of the lālī species of bulbul are red.'

2. Vide also 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 11, h (1), (2).

### XXXII. RAKHNĀ, KARNĀ, AND LĀNĀ

1. Rakhnā signifies 'to keep', 'to preserve', as well as 'to place or put': Wuh ghorē (or ghorā) rakhtā hai, 'he keeps horses'; Agar apni izzat rakhne chāhte ho—, 'if you desire to retain your honour' (i.e. to avoid being disgraced)—. Consequently, in compound verbs rakhnā indicates a continuation of an action, whereas karnā (and sometimes lānā)

*often* indicates the commencement of the action. *Dushmanī karnā* is 'to begin to be at enmity with a person', but *dushmanī rakhnā* is 'to keep up enmity with'. Examples—

I have begun to have an *Main us se muhabbat kartā hūn.* affection for him.

I am fond of him (i.e. always). *Main us se muhabbat rakhtā hūn.*

I believe in the existence of *Main dūzakh par īmān rakhtā hūn.* hell.

The infidel believed (was converted).

She began to pretend artfully. *Wuh nakhra lā,ī.*

She is a tricky female. *Wuh nakhra kartī hai.*

2. *Vide* also XXI.

### XXXIII. *SAKNA*

1. The verb *saknā* can only be used in a compound; it cannot stand alone. Such sentences as 'He can do this, but I cannot' are frequently translated by Bengalis and by servants of Europeans, *Wuh is kām ko kar-saktā hai magar main nahin saktā*: here *saktā* should be *kar-saktā*.

2. *Vide* XL, 7.

### XXXIV. *TĀTHARNA*

This verb means: (1) 'to come to a standstill'; (2) 'to remain standing still'; (3) 'to wait'; (4) 'to be proved, considered'; (5) 'to be settled, determined'; (6) 'to last, endure'. Examples—

(1) The carriage came to a *Gārī chalte chalte thahar-ga,ī.* standstill.

(2) Stand still (remain standing) where you are. *Apnī:jāgah pār thaharo.*

(3) Wait till he returns. *Uske āne tāk yahān thaharo.*

- (4) He was proved a liar *Wuh jhūṭā thaharā.*  
 (also, he turned out to be  
 a liar).
- (5) It was settled (deter- *Yih bāt thahar-ga, i ki kal*  
 mined) that I should start *main yahān se rawāna hūn.*  
 to-morrow.
- (6a) These boots won't last *Yih jūṭā<sup>1</sup> bahut nahīn thaha-*  
 long. *regā.*
- (6b) Meat won't keep in the *Garmiyon men gosht nahīn*  
 hot weather. *thahariā.*

### XXXV. PRESENT TENSE

1. The Present Tense indicates (1) an act now taking place, or (2) an habitual act, or (3) a universal truth, or (4) an immediate future, or (5) an immediate past, or (6) past time the effects of which still continue. It is also used for (7) past time in a vivid narration (Historical Present), (8) as a Future to indicate certainty, and (9) as a Future Subjunctive. Examples—

- (1) The sahib is now sleeping. *Sāhib abhī sote hain.*
- (2) I take a warm bath daily. *Main har roz garm pānī se*  
*ghusl kartā hūn.*
- (3) He was such a fool that *Wuh is qadr almaq thā ki*  
 he did not know the sky *yih tak<sup>2</sup> na-jāntā thā ki us*  
 was (is) above his head. *ke sar par āsmān hai.*
- (4) All right, I'll let you off. *Khair, main tum ko chhor-*  
*detā hūn.*
- (5) The Colonel Sahib has *Karnail Sāhib āp ko bulāte*  
 called you. *, hain (or, —ne-bulāyā hai).*

<sup>1</sup> In Delhi *jūṭī* signifies either boots or shoes, but in Behar *jūṭā* (m.) is a man's and *jūṭī* (f.) a woman's shoe.

<sup>2</sup> *Tak* in this sense is not a postposition, *vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 30, d.

(6) I have known him for a long time. *Main us ko bahut din se jāntā hūn.*

(7a) When I came home late last night I saw that your lamp was still burning. *Jab main rāt ko der ghar wāpas āyā, dekhā ki tum-hārā chirāgh jallā hai (or jaltā tha).*

(7b) As soon as I set foot in the room I saw a thief concealed under the table. *Main ne jo kamre ke andar qadam rakhā, to kyā dekhtā hūn ki mez ke nīche ek chor chipā baithā hai.*

*Vide also XXXVI, 7.*

(8) I will come there in a year or so to see you. *Main do ek baras men wahān ātā hūn aur tum se mulāqāt kartā hūn.*

(9) If I catch him I'll give him his deserts. *Agar main use pātā hūn, to usko uske kiye kā maza chakkātā hūn.*

In the following the verb is in the Present on account of the direct narration :—

(10) I saw his face (by the light of the lamp) and returned thanks to God that it was not my son. *Main ne us kā chihra dekhā aur Khudā kā shukr kiyā ki merā bētā nahin hai.*

NOTE.—After an Historical Present, either the Direct or the Indirect Narration may be employed, as : *Kyā dekhtā hai ki uskī (or merī) taraf ek sher daurā ātā hai.*

2. A continuous act now taking place may also be expressed by a compound with *rahnā*, as : *Abhī wuh so-rahā hai*, 'he is now sleeping' = *abhī soyā hū,ā hai*.

*Vide also 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 11, h (1), (2).*

3. Immediate intention is expressed thus : *Wuh likhne ko hai*, or *likhne-wālā hai*, 'he is just going to write.'

4. If the auxiliary is suppressed (in negative sentences<sup>1</sup>), the verb in the feminine plural takes an *n* to show it is plural, as : *Yih auraten burā kām nahīn kartīn* (or *nahīn kartī hain*).

5. In two co-ordinate sentences the auxiliary need only be mentioned once, as : (affirmatively) *Wuh ātā jātā hai*; *wuh khātī aur pītī hai*; (negatively) *Wuh na-ātā hai na-jātā*; *wuh na-khātī hai na-pītī*.

6. In quoting an author either the Present or the Perfect can be used, as : 'Sa'dī says,' *Shaikh Sa'dī farmāte hain*; or *Shaikh Sa'dī ne farmāyā hai*.

7. *Vide XL, 8, and XLII, 9.*

8. Further examples—

I have known him from infancy. *Main bach-paṇ hī se usko jāntā hūn.*

I have never had even the appearance of comfort since I was born. *Jab se main paidā hū,ā (hūn) kabhi main ne ārām ki sūrat nahīn dekhū.*

When can such a thing be found again? (i.e. never). *Wuh kab (or kakān) hāth ātā hai (or āne-wālā hai)? (wuh kahīn hāth āne-wālā hai?).*

I will send you the sonnet after correction. *Ghaẓl, ba'ḍ iṣlāh ke, bhejta hūn.*

I have had fever for a month. Should he be coming here I shall be (am) delighted. *Mujhe ek māh se tap ātī hai. Agar wuh yahān ātā ho, to barī khushī kī bāt hai?*

I don't think he intends to sell the goshawk; even if he were to sell it, it is<sup>3</sup> not worth keeping. *Merā khīyāl hai ki wuh bāz nahīn bechne kā; jo bechtā ho tau bhī rakhne ke lāiq nahīn hai.<sup>3</sup>*

<sup>1</sup> In affirmative sentences the auxiliary cannot be suppressed; *kartīn* (affirmative) would be Indefinite Tense, 'would have done.'

<sup>2</sup> *Hai* here indicates certainty, whereas *ho* in the previous clause indicates doubt.

<sup>3</sup> Here the Present for the Future denotes certainty.

D.V. I'll come to you before the end of December. *Khudā chāhe, to ākhir Disambar tak tum ko ā-dekhā hūn* (= *Khudā chāhe Disambar āyā<sup>1</sup> aur main ne tum ko ā-dekhā*).

I saw in the paper that a meeting of the Trustees of the Museum is to be held (would be held) next week.  
If you come, well. *Main ne akhbār men dekhā* (or *parhā*) *ki 'ajā, ib-khānc ke 'Trastīyon' kā jalsaagle hafte dar pesh hai.*

I thought it (the book) would be of no use to you, so I didn't give it to you. *Agar ā,o, to achchhā hai (= hogā).*

*Vide also second example in XXXVI, 8.*

#### XXXVI. THE AORIST OR PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

1. (a) As a finite verb in proverbs,<sup>3</sup> the Aorist is generally, perhaps always, used for the Present Indicative, as : *Bandar jāne adrak kā sawād ?* 'does a monkey appreciate the taste of ginger ?' (= cast not your pearls before swine).

(b) In sayings, however, the Present Indicative is also used, as : *Tālī donon hāthon se bajtī hai*, 'it takes two hands to clap' ('it takes two to make a quarrel,' or = 'don't be selfish ; if I help you, you must help me').

(c) *Khudā jāne*, 'God knows !' (an exclamation), but *Khudā jāntā hai ki main sach boltā hūn*, 'God is witness that I am speaking the truth.'

2. As a finite verb, in questions, it indicates uncertainty or

<sup>1</sup> Here the Preterite is used for the Future for certainty. For *aur*, *vidc* VIII, 3, and 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 25, h.

<sup>2</sup> Direct narration.

<sup>3</sup> Formerly the Aorist and Present were identical in form ; and as proverbs are usually old, the employment of the Aorist in them may be a survival. The Present Tense used to be considered a combination of the participle and the substantive verb.

doubt, etc., as : *Kyā karūn?* 'what can I do?' The Aorist implies a duty or doubt, the Future asks about a fact, as : *Wuh āwe?* 'has he permission to come?' 'may he come?' but *Wuh āvegā?* 'will he come (or won't he)?' *Vide* also Future, XXXVII, 2 (b), last two examples.

3. It is also used in asking permission or advice, as : *Kyā main jā,ām?* 'have I permission to go?' *Kis ko dūn?* 'to whom shall I (or should I) give it?' *Yih kahān jā,e?* 'where do you order him to go?' but *Yih kahān jā,egā?* 'where does he intend going?' (a simple question): with *kyā karūn* and *kyā karūngā*, however, this distinction is not nicely observed.

4. It expresses a wish, as : *Khudā terā bhalā kare,* 'God deal well with thee!' (a blessing; often ironical as an expression of impatience or annoyance).

5. It gives the missing persons of the Imperative, as : *Chalen,* 'let us go.' It is also used for polite commands, *vide* XXXVII, 9, and XXXVIII, 1 (a) and 5.

6. (a) As a subordinate verb it is used as a subjunctive after the conjunctives 'if', 'that', 'perhaps', 'in order to', 'on condition that', 'before that', etc., and it expresses hope, desire, inclination, advice, necessity, duty, etc., as : *Jā,o,* 'you may go;' *Khair kuchh hī do, mujhe manzūr hai,* 'well, whatever you may choose to give me I'll accept gladly;' *Mere pās ko,ī kitāb nahīn hai ki* (or *jo*) *parhūn,* 'I have no book to read' (lit. that I should read it); *Qarib thā ki ghore par se gir-jā,e,* 'he nearly fell off his horse' (lit. it was near that he should fall); *Ummēd kai ki usko taraqqī mile<sup>2</sup>* (or to express more certainty, *milegi*), 'I hope he will get promotion' (that he may get—).

(b) It is even used to express past time, as : *Mere pās ko,ī kitāb na-thī ki parhūn* (or, better, *parhtā*), 'I had no book to

<sup>1</sup> The Aorist is not always used after *shāyad*, etc., as : *Shāyad kahīn pānī barastā hai jo is waqt jhandī hawā chāt-rahi hai.*

<sup>2</sup> In addressing a person the Aorist is more polite than the Future, as : *Ummid ki* (or *ummidwār hūn ki*) *āp tashrif lā,en.* After *ummed*, *hai* is omitted.

read, that I should read it' (or, better, *parhtā* = that I should have read it); *Is se pahle ki main paidā hūn* (or, not so good, *hū,ā*),<sup>1</sup> *yih wāqi'a ho-chukā thā*, 'this happened before I was born' (lit. before that I may be born).

In 'Perhaps our (future) meeting was written in my Fate that (and hence) I escaped in the great epidemic last year', *shōyad merī taqdīr men tumhārī mulāqāt likhī thī ki main pār sāl 'āmm wabā se jītā bach-rahā* (not *rahūn*), the last clause is not subordinate as at first sight it may appear, and hence the Aorist cannot be substituted.

**REMARK I.**—Though the Aorist is used, as in the examples above, after *qabl is ke*, etc., 'before,' the Preterite must be used after *ba'd uske*, etc., 'after that,' as the time is anterior to the principal clause: 'This happened after I was born,' *ba'd is-ke ki main paidā hū,ā* (not *hūn*) *yih bāt wāqi' hū,ī*.

**REMARK II.**—Note the sequence of tenses in the following: *Ba'd us ke ki insān mar-jā,e* (not *martā hai*) *us ko dafn karo*; *jalā,o mat*, 'after death you should bury and not burn;' but *Ba'd us ke ki insān martā hai us ko dafn karte hain*; in the latter the Present Indicative requires a Present Indicative after it, and it could not be followed by an Imperative.

(c) The Aorist frequently occurs in direct narration, as: *Khiyāl āyā hai ki* (or *ji men āyā hai ki*) *āj shām ko thetar dekhne jā,ūn*, 'it has just come into my head to go to the theatre to-night' (lit. —that 'let me go to the theatre to-night'); or *khiyāl men āyā hai ki 'thetar jānā chāhiye'*, or '*thetar chaliye*', which are also direct narration.

(d) After *jab*, used conditionally, the Aorist is used: 'Tell him when he comes,' *jab wuh ā,e* (not *ā,egā*) *use khabar karnā*.<sup>3</sup> Compare with first example in 6 (b), Remark II.

<sup>1</sup> Aorist better than Preterite.

<sup>2</sup> If the apodosis is Future, the prosthesis must be Future, as: *Jab wuh ā,egā* (not *ā,e*) *main us ko khabar dūngā*.

<sup>3</sup> Not *karnī*, as the Infinitive used as an Imperative makes no change for gender.

The Present Indicative is used after *jab*, only when it is temporal, as : *Jab wuh yahān ātā hai* (*tab or to*) *mere sāth shatranj kheltā hai*, 'whenever, on every occasion that, he comes here, he plays chess with me.' In other words, *jab* with the Present Indicative always means *jab kabhi*, 'whenever.'

*Vide* also 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lessons 16, *g*, and 31, *b*.

7. (a) The Aorist is also used as an Historical Present for the Preterite or Present Indicative, as : *Kamre men jo pā, on rakhūn* (or *rakhī hūn* or *rakhā*) *to kyā dekhtā hūn ki ek chor mez ke nīchc chipā baithā hai*; but *kyā dekhūn* here could not be used.

(b) It is also used as an Historical Present for the Imperfect of habitual action, as : *Main jab kabhi wahān jā, un to kyā dekhūn ki wuh so-rahā hai*, 'whenever I went (used to go there), I found him sleeping.'

(c) In Conditions it is sometimes interchangeable with the Preterite Indicative; *vide* XLII, 5, and LVI, 5 (*b*).

8. The Aorist is politely used for the Future; thus a servant would say to his master, *Āp thori der taskrif rakhiye main zarā' roṭī khā-ā-un*,<sup>1</sup> 'if you will kindly wait a moment, sir, I will go and get something to eat and come back' (lit. I may go<sup>2</sup> and—); but a master would say to his servant, *Tum yahān thaharo ham khā-kar āte hain*.<sup>3</sup>

9. The Aorist is sometimes used to express regret, some such expression as *haif ki* being understood, as : *Tu wahān dāne dāne ko tarse aur main yahān donon waqt<sup>4</sup> pet bharkar*

<sup>1</sup> *Zarā* is here merely used for politeness : *khā* = *khākar*.

<sup>2</sup> Hence Indians, wishing to speak civilly, frequently make the mistake in English of saying, 'I may go and get something to eat,' etc.

<sup>3</sup> Present for Indicative Future; but not *khā-āte hain*, *vide* Conj. Partic. II. Here the Future would indicate a time too remote, and the Present is necessary.

<sup>4</sup> Here both the verbs could be in the Present Tense: *Donon waqt* = morning and evening.

*khayā karūn*,<sup>1</sup> '(ah that) you should be there longing for even a grain, while I here eat my fill twice a day.'

10. After *dekhīye* = 'let us see' the Aorist or the Present Tense is used, but not the Future : *Dekhīye kyā pesh ā,e* (or *ātā hai*), 'let us see what *will* happen.' Here, even if some adverb signifying distant time were to be added, the Future would be incorrect. *Vide* also XXXVII, 1, 2.

11. The Aorist is sometimes interchangeable with the Present Dubious ; *vide* 13 and L, 1, and VII, 8.

12. For the Aorist after an Indefinite Antecedent, *vide* VII, Relative Pronoun, 8.

13. Note the idiomatic use of the Aorists in the following : *Jo shakhs Khudā kī 'ibādat kare* (or *kartā ho*) *wuh main hūn*, 'I am the only one that worships God,' but *main wuh shakhs hūn jo Khudā kī 'ibādat kartā hai* (not *kare*) : *Main jab chāhūn, ā-jā-saktā hūn* ; *gārī mangā, ūnaur chal-dūn*, 'I can come and go as I please ; I have only to order a carriage and start.' This last use, however, of the Aorist is not common ; the Preterite could be substituted. *Us se to kaho ki yih kām kare* (or *kar*), 'you may tell him to do it (but he won't be able to).'

14. *Lagnā* after an Infinitive may sometimes take the place of a Subjunctive ; *vide* H.S.S., 9, b, XLIV, 3, and XXXVII, 6.

### 15. Examples—

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (1) Have I permission to say                                 | <i>Main kuchh bolūn ?</i>                           |
| something ?  |   |
| (2) Shall I too go ?   | <i>Main bhī jā,ūn ?</i>                             |
| (3) Abuse me to your heart's content ; I don't care.         | <i>Hazār gālī do<sup>2</sup> mujhe parwā nahīn.</i> |
| (4) How can I face teacher ? (I'm ashamed to go before him). | <i>Main kyā munh leke ustād ke pās jā,ūn ?</i>      |

<sup>1</sup> See n. 4 on previous page.

<sup>2</sup> *Hazār* = 'however much' ; *do* is Aorist and not Imperative : *ko, i hazār gālī dc mujhe parwā nahīn.*

- (5) How dare I tell you that I love you ? *Main kis munh se kahūn ki tumhen chāhtā hūn ?*
- (6) Your position does not entitle you to be a *darbārī* (= ' who are you to be a *darbārī* ? ' said contemptuously). *Tumhārā munh nahīn ki lāt Sāhib ke darbār men jā,o.*
- (7) I estimate there are about twenty persons. *Aṭkal se kahtā hūn ki bīs ek ādmī honge (not hon) ; but shā, id bīs ek ādmī hon or honge.*
- (8) God's curse on thee ! *Tujh par la'nat ho !*
- (9) How on earth, how the devil, can one enjoy oneself with a deaf mute as a companion ? *Ek gūnge bahre ke sāth insān kyā khāk dil bahlā,e ?*
- (10) How is it possible for this to be the case ? *Yih kyūn-kar ho-saktā hai (not ho-sake<sup>1</sup>) ?*
- (11) Is it impossible that I should take leave of you and take service elsewhere ? *Yih nahīn ho-saktā<sup>2</sup> ki main Āp ko chhor-kar kisi aur kī naukari karūn ?*
- (12) A copy of *Haji Baba* reached me before you sent me yours. *Hāji Bābā kā ek nuskha pahle is-ke ki tum bhejo (or tum ne bhejā) mere pās pahunch chukā thā.*
- (13) What else could I<sup>3</sup> have done except hitting him back ? *Siwā,e is ke aur kyā kar-saktā thā ki main<sup>3</sup> us kī mār kā jawāb dān ?*
- (14) Shall he do it (asks permission) ? *Kyā wuh kare ?*

<sup>1</sup> *Ho-sakegā* is used only for a real Future.

<sup>2</sup> *Ghair mumkin, mimkin-nahīn*, etc., are not used by the uneducated.

<sup>3</sup> Note the position of *main* in this sentence ; it could be inserted before *aur*.

- (15) Will he do it or not (asks *Kyā wuh karegā ?*  
information) ? (also = he  
won't do it, is he likely to  
do it?).
- (16) I have no fit book to *Mere pās aisi ko,ī kitāb nahīn*  
present to your Honour. *hai jo qabil huzūr ke ho*  
(not *hai*).

### XXXVII. FUTURE

1. The Future indicates an absolute or definite future, as : *Wuh kal āwegā*, 'he will come to-morrow.'

REMARK.—For the immediate future the Present Tense is used, *vide XXXV, 1 (4)*.

2. (a) It is used presumptively with some word expressing *ta,kid*, as : *Wuh kal zarūr āwegā*, 'it is presumed he will come to-morrow,' 'he is certain to come to-morrow.'

(b) After verbs of hoping, fearing, considering, certainty, etc., the Future is used presumptively, as : *Mujhe ummed thā ki wuh mujhe in'ām degā*, 'I hoped that he would give me a reward ;' *Main dārā ki wuh mujhe māregā* (or *aisā na-ho ki wuh mujhe māre*<sup>1</sup>), 'I feared he would hit me ;' *Main jāntā thā ki wuh ā,egā*, 'I knew that he would come.'

*Hogā*, 'it will be so,' 'it must be so,' or 'it might be so' : *Yaqīn hai ki Khudā ke sāmne mujhe apne ā'māl kā jawāb denū paregā*, 'I know for certain that I shall have to stand before God and be called to account for my actions ;' but *Yaqīn hai ki yih khatt do din us ke pahunchne se pahle tumhāre pās pahunche* (not *pahunchegā*), 'I feel sure or I trust that this letter will reach you two days before he does ;' in the latter case the writer cannot assume certain knowledge, and therefore the Aorist is necessary.

(c) *Vide also XXXVI, 10.*

3. It is used in Future Conditions with a slight idea of

<sup>1</sup> Or —*ki kahīn wuh mujhe māre nahīn*, or *mār-na-baiṭhe*.

certainty, *vide* LVI. *Agar hukm ho to ham wahān jā, en,*  
 'I am ready to go if you only order me,' i.e. 'I am merely  
 waiting for your orders'; but *Agar hukm ho to ham wahān*  
*jā, enge*, 'I will go if you order me to (but I don't want to).'

REMARK.—For the Aorist and Future after *jab*, *vide* XXXVI,

6 (d), and notes.

4. In Conditions it can take the place of the Precative Future Imperative, as : *Agar āp yih kām kījiyegā* (or *karenge*) *to goyā mujhe mol-lījiyegā* (or *le-lenge*), 'if you will graciously do this you will make me your slave;' *vide* Imperatives, 1 (b).

REMARK.—Note the Future here after *goyā*, 'as though'; in literal English, 'it will be as though you have bought me.'

5. The Future of *chuknā* often supplies an English Perfect, as : 'When I have eaten I will drink,' *jab main khānā khā-chuhūngā tab pānī pī, ūngā*.

6. *Lagnā* with the Infinitive can take the place of the Future, as : *Main us se kyūn milne lagā?* (or *milūn*) = *main us se na-milūngā*.

7. The Future of *honā* when a simple verb is also used for past time: *hogā*, 'will be,' 'must be,' 'might be,' and 'must have been'; but *hū,ā hogā*, 'must have occurred,' 'must have become.'<sup>1</sup> The difference in these cases between *hogā* and *hū,ā hogā* is the same as that between *hai* and *hotā* *hai*, *vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 1, g, as : *Tum bachpan men bare sharīr hoge* (not *hū,c hoge*), 'you must have been' very naughty in your childhood; but *Yih bāt hū,ī hogī*, 'this must have occurred,'<sup>1</sup> and *Main qhadr se pahle paidā hū,ā hūngā*, 'I must have been born (become born) before the mutiny.'

8. In other cases the English Future Perfect will be represented in Hindustani by the Simple Future when there is no doubt in the case; *vide* Future Perfect, LIV, 2.

<sup>1</sup> When 'must have been' can be rendered in English by 'must have occurred or become', it is to be translated *hū,ā hogā*, otherwise by *hogā*.

9. Country people, when writing, use the Future in giving polite commands, as : *Merā salām apne bhā,ī ko kah-doge* (for *kah-do*), but this is incorrect. In English the Future and in modern Persian the Present Future is used in polite commands, but in Urdu the Aorist is so used.

10. It may take the place of an Aorist ; *vide XXXVI, 8, also XLII, 7.*

11. Examples—

I will <del>commence</del> <sup>56911</sup> this when I have leisure.	<i>Jab kām se furṣat pā,ūngā is men hāth dālūngā.</i>
When I have finished this business I will commence the other.	<i>Jab yih kām kar-chukūngā, to dūsrā kām shurū' karūngā.</i>
Why should I lie about the matter ? (i.e. I have no objection to lie as you want).	<i>Main kāhe-ko jhūṭ bolūngā ?</i> (or <i>main kahe-ko jhūṭ bolne lagā ?</i> )
For what reason should I lie ? (i.e. why do you want me to lie about it ?).	<i>Main kahe-ko jhūṭ bolūn ?</i>
When you went there, he must have stood up (become standing) on seeing you.	<i>Tum jab wahān ga,e wuh tumhen dekh-ke kharā hū,ā hogā.</i>
When you went there he must have been standing (in a standing state).	<i>Tum jab wahān ga,e wuh kharā hogā.</i>
I must have been well by the time you came to me.	<i>Tumhāre āne ke waqt tak main achchhā hūngā.</i>
I must have recovered (become well) by the time you reached me.	<i>Tumhāre āne ke waqt tak main achchhā hū,ā hūngā.</i>
There can never have been such peace and quiet in the country before.	<i>Mulk men aisā chain pahle kabhi na hūn' hūgē</i>
Such an event can never have occurred before.	<i>Aisā wāqi' a kabhi nā-hū,ā hogā.</i>

He must be now wide awake on hearing of this.	<i>Yih khabar sunke us ke kān khaṛe honge.</i>
He will certainly be successful in his examination this time.	<i>Is daf'a imtihān men zarūr kām-yāb hogā.</i>
When the Sahib comes I will tell him.	<i>Jab Sāhib ā, enge un ko khabar dūngā.</i>
If the Sahib comes tell him.	<i>Jab Sāhib ā,<sup>en</sup> un ko khabar do.</i>

### XXXVIII. IMPERATIVES

1. Besides the ordinary form of the Imperative there are three other forms.

(a) (*Āp*) *baīthiye*, pl., 'please sit down (now)'; respectful. The negative is *na-baīthiye* (*mat* is rather imperious).

The original passive gerundial suffix in Hindi was *iyā*, as: *Kariya*. 'it was fit to be done.' The impersonal verb *chāhiye* may be a survival of this form. *Kyā kahiye?* 'what should one say?' 'what is to be said?' *kyā jāniye?* 'what should be known?' 'how does one know?' and *na-jāniye*, 'one does not know,' are said to be survivals and are used as Aorists.

(b) The precative (*Āp*) *kijiegā*, 2nd person plural, 'please do it (in the future)', respectful, as: (*Āp*) *kal do-pahar tashrif lā, iyegā*, 'please come at noon to-morrow;' incorrectly and in vulgar Delhi Hindustani *tashrif lā,o*.

In (a) there is some idea of command, but (b) is precative only. *Āp mū'āf kijiyegā*, 'will you please excuse me,' is more respectful than *āp mū'āf kijiye*, 'please excuse me.' Vide also XXXVII, 4.

(c) The third form is polite but not 'respectful', and is generally used to inferiors; it is singular<sup>1</sup> or plural Future,

<sup>1</sup> Not Future, vide XXXVI, 6 (d), and note.

<sup>2</sup> *Hāzir honā* could not be substituted, as it is imperious.

<sup>3</sup> According to Platts, originally the plural of the form in *iye*.

as : (*Tū* or *tum*) *dījiyo*, sing. or pl., 'give it (to-morrow or whenever you can);' *Ko,ī ā,iyo ko,ī ā,iyo*, 'come somebody, come somebody' (in commands *ko,ī ā,o*). *Baiṭhiyo*, for instance, could only be used as a Future, as : *Jab tum wahān jū,o to kursī par baiṭhiyo*. This form is used as a singular precative in addressing the Deity, as : *Ay Khudā us ko zinda rakhiyo*; *vide* also 4.

2. (a) and (b) are often used for the 2nd person plural Aorist or Future to show respect, as : *Agar āp rupīya dījiye to wāj,as na-māngiye*, 'if you are kind enough to give me the money you mustn't ask for it back;' *Phir āp chaliyegā kāhān?* 'then where will you be pleased to go?' *Khudā kī la'nat kāfiron par hājiyo*; old for *ho*.

3. (a) is also used impersonally, as : *Jī chāhtā hai ki is waqt so-rāhiye*, 'I want to sleep;' *Kyā jāniyc ki wuh ā,egā yā nahīn?* 'how is one to know whether he will come or not?'

4. (c) is also used as a precative, as : *Khudā kī la'nat us par hājiyo* (or *ho*), 'God's curse light on him!' In modern Urdu *ho* is preferred.

May the shaft of my sighs    *Jis ne tūr mārā merī āh<sup>1</sup> kā*  
 pierce the heart (lit. liver)      *tūr us ke kaleje men lagiyo.*  
 of him that smote thee  
 with this arrow.

5. The 3rd person plural Aorist is also used as a respectful Imperative, as : *Āp tashrif rakhen*, 'please sit down.'

#### 6. *Vide XXXIX, 4.*

REMARK.—'Kindly do this,' or such phrases, must be rendered by *mihrbānī karke* or some equivalent; the respectful Imperatives are used only towards people of superior or equal rank, or towards inferiors of high rank.

<sup>1</sup> Sighs are by Eastern poets compared to anything straight, to the letter *alif*, to a spear, etc.

## XXXIX. THE INFINITIVE

For the following note I am indebted to Dr. G. A. Grierson, C.I.E. :—

1. 'The so-called Hindūstānī infinitive in *nā*, as in *chal-nā*, "to go," has a composite derivation.

Amongst the numerous derivations of a Sanskrit verbal root, there are—

(a) An abstract noun ending in *-anām* (or *-anāñ*), as in *chal-anām*, "the act of going."

(b) A future passive participle in *-anīyas* (or *-anīyās*), with exactly the same force as, and with the same derivation as, the Latin future passive participle in *-endus*, etc. Thus, *chal-anīyas*, "about to be gone," proper "to be gone", or (neuter) "it is to be gone", "one should go". Compare the Latin (*er-*)*cclendus*.

With the addition of certain terminations, both these become *nā* in Hindūstānī. So that *chal-nā* may be either a noun (= *chal-anām*), "the acting of going," "to go," or it may be a participle, i.e. an adjective (*chal-nā*, fem. *chal-nī*), meaning "fit to be gone", "worthy to go", "one should go".

Similarly, *mār-nā* is either *mār-anām*, "the act of striking," "to strike," or *mār-anīyas*, "fit to be struck," "worthy to be struck," as an adjective. *Kar-nā* is either *kar-anām*, "the act of doing," "to do," or *kar-anīyas*, "fit to be done," "worthy to be done," as an adjective.

2. 'Examples of the infinitive or verbal noun are—

*jhūñh bōlnā burā hai*, "to lie is wrong;"

*khānē-men sharm kyā hai?* "what shame is there in eating?"

*mārnē lagā*, for *mārnē-kō-lagā*, "he became attached to the act of striking," "he began to strike."

3. 'Examples of the future passive participle are—

*jō kām karnā hai*, "the business which is to be done;"

*yih bāt karnā hai*, "this thing is to be done;"

*jō kām karne hain*, "the things which are to be done;"

*mujh-ko jānā hai*, "as for me, it is to be gone, I must go" (*mihi eundum est*, word for word the same idiom in Latin).

Owing to the two words being identical in form, the two are often confused, even by good writers. Though identical in appearance they have different meanings, just as *māre* may mean either "he may strike" or "they were struck".

4. As an Imperative the Infinitive is less peremptory, and is therefore more civil than the Imperative proper. It is properly a Future Imperative, but is also used politely for a Present Imperative. *Wahān mat jā,o* is said to be a person either actually on the move or just about to move, but *wahān na-jānā* refers to a future action or politely to a present action.

Thus, 'avoid all that leads to adultery' is better translated by *zinā ke pās bhī na-jānā*<sup>1</sup> (Future) than by *zinā ke pās bhī mai jā,o*.

5. The Passive Infinitive, if the logical subject is mentioned, is never used : its place is in such cases taken by the Active, as: *Wuh apnī mān ke sikhāne se yih bolī*, 'she was instructed by her mother to say this';<sup>2</sup> *Mere bāp ke māre-jāne par merā sārā khāndān tabāh ho-gayā*, 'after my father was killed my whole family was ruined.'

#### XL: IMPERFECT

1. The Imperfect denotes frequency or duration of an action, or that a continuous action was going on at some past time, as: *Pahār bār bār gunjte the*, 'the hills gave back the echo again and again'; *Wuh jānwar apne ko nazaron se chupā,e rakhtā thā lekin uskī āwāz se ma'lūm hotā thā ki wuh ko,ī barā jānwar hai*, 'that animal continued to keep out of sight, but from its cry I thought that it must be some large beast'; *Us ke rone dhone se bādshāh kī nāk qen dam*

<sup>1</sup> *Sūra-yi Bāñi Īsrā,ii.*

<sup>2</sup> *Mān* may here be regarded as the logical subject of *sikhāne*.

*ā-gayā lekin us ke chup karāne kī ko, ī tadbīr samajh men na-ātī thī*, 'the king was wearied by his (the slave's) lamentation, but no plan of silencing him could be thought of.'

REMARK.—The progressive, not the habitual, action of the Imperfect may be expressed by means of *rahnā*, as: *Main jā-rahā thā ki*—, 'I was going along when—'; vide 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 11, *h* (1) and (2).

2. The Imperfect also signifies that an action was a habit. In English it is frequently represented by the Past Tense: 'It was his custom to take a stroll early before breakfast,' *us kī yih 'ādat thī ki roz ṣubh ko ṭahlā<sup>1</sup> kartā (thā)*; 'He did this every night,' *wuh har shab yih kām kiyā kartā thā* or *kartā thā* (not Preterite nor *kartā-rahā*); but if the limits of the time were defined the Preterite would be substituted, as: *Us ne mahine bhar tak har rāt yih kām kiyā* (or *wuh yih kām kartā-rahā*, but not *kartā thā*).

3. The Imperfect sometimes signifies 'began to—', or 'to be on the point of doing': 'I went to the city and began to look at (while I was looking at) the shops when suddenly I heard the sound of firing,' *main shahr ko gayā aur, dukānon kū tamāshā dekhtā thā ki yak-ā-yak top kī āwāz ā, ī*; 'The bird was just going to settle on the tree when some one fired off a gun,' *chīyyā darakht par baithā chāhti thī ki kisī ne bandāq 'fair' kī*. Sometimes it indicates a wish, as: *Main wahān na-jātā-thā magar wuh mujhe zabardastī (sc) le-gayā*, 'I did not want to go, but he made me; he took me there by force.'

4. In interrogations it indicates emphatic refusal, as: *Us ko qaid-khāne se rihā, pāne kī ārzū thī lekin wuh kab rihā, pātā thā?* 'he hoped to be released from prison, but there was no chance of it;'  
*Bandāq chalī na-thū*, 'the gun would not go off;'  
*Bārūt namū ke bā'is sulagtī na-thū*, 'the powder would not ignite on account of being damp;'  
*Us ko mā'lūm*

<sup>1</sup> *Chikil qadamī* (*k.*) is a literary word for a 'stroll'.

<sup>2</sup> More idiomatic to omit *thā* in such sentences.

*thā ki yahān haīza hai is liye kab ātā thā?* 'he knew that there was cholera here, so of course he did not come.'<sup>1</sup>

5. In two or more co-ordinate clauses the *thā*, etc., of the Imperfect may be expressed with the last only, as: *Wuh subh kō uṭh-kar pahle wuzū kartā, phir namāz parhtā, aur tab ko, ī aur kām kartā thā.* Vide also LXII, 3 (a).

6. The Imperfect and Present of *denā* are used in the sense of 'to offer', as: *Main ghore ke liye sau rūpiya detā thā,* 'I offered a hundred rupees for the horse,' but *kitne ko diyā tha?* 'for how much did he sell it?' *Main sau rupiya detā thā lekin wuh kab letā thā* (or *us ne qabūl na-kiyā*), 'I offered him a hundred rupees, but he refused.'

7. The Imperfect of a verb compounded with *saknā* can sometimes take the place of the conditional, as: *Phir jab tak āp kā khull Rangūn kā paltā likhā hū,ā na-ā,e<sup>2</sup> main āp ko khull kpan-kar likh-saktā thā or likhtā?* 'so until I got your letter with your address at Rangoon, how could I write?' Vide also VII, 8.

8. A Present Tense in direct narration may become an Imperfect in indirect, as: *Agar main wahān hotā to unhen dekhla-detā ki main un ke liye kyā kuchh kar-saktā (thā),* 'had I been there I would have shown them what I could have done for them;' in direct narration *main — kar-saktā hūn* or *kartā hūn.*

9. The Imperfect can sometimes take the place of the Present Dubious; vide Present Dubious, L, 3.

10. The Imperfect sometimes takes the place of the Aorist; vide VII, Relative Pronoun, 8.

11. Vide XXXVI, 7 (b), and LXII, 3 (c).

<sup>1</sup> *Us ko ma'lūm hai ki yahān haīza hai is liye kab ātā hai?* 'he knows that there is cholera here, so he won't come.'

<sup>2</sup> Aorist or Present subjunctive for past time, vide XXXVI, 6 (b); the Conditional or Past subjunctive *ātā* would signify that no letter had been received, whereas *ā,e* indicates that a letter giving the Rangoon address has been received.

## XLI. THE PERFECT

1. The Perfect is indefinite; the Past or Preterite usually definite; it is therefore incorrect both in English and Hindustani to say 'I have seen him yesterday'; *Wuh Lāhor gayā* or *gayā hai*, 'he has gone to Lahore;' but *Merā bhāñ Lāhor gayā magar main nahīn gayā*: in this last example *gayā hai* could not be substituted; *vide* also XLIII, 1, n. 1, and 2 (b).

2. Sometimes either the Perfect or the Past Tense may be used according to the point of view of the speaker, as: 'Long nights I wept and wailed ere God bestowed on me this child,' *main ne kiññi rāten āh o zārī men guzārī hain* (or *guzārīn*) *jab jākar*<sup>1</sup> *Khudā ne mujhe yih larkā 'aṭā kiyā* (*hai*). If *hai* be inserted in this last sentence, it indicates that the boy is alive; omit it, and he may be living or dead.

3. The Perfect also expresses a past time, the effects of which still continue, as: *Jab se main yahāñ āyā hūn usko nahin dekhā hai*, 'I have not seen him since I came (lit. have come)<sup>2</sup> here'; *Main ne shādī kī hai*, 'I have married (and my wife is still living);' *Us ko fajr se bukhār chārhā hai* (not *chārhā*), 'he has had fever since the morning (and still has it);' *Us ko āj tap chārhī*, 'the fever attacked him to-day (and he may or may not have it still);' but *Us ko āj tap chārhī hai*, 'he has fever to-day.'

4. The Perfect also indicates an action just completed if the effects continue, as: *Main abhī āyā hūn* (or *āyā*),<sup>3</sup> 'I have just come;'; *Wuh is sāl ghar gayā hai*, 'he has gone home this year (and is still there);' *vide* also XLII, 3.

REMARK.—If, however, the effects of the action do not continue, the Preterite is used, as: *Tum ne dawā khājī?* 'have

<sup>1</sup> For *jab jākar* (indicating a long time) *vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 29, d.

<sup>2</sup> It is a common English vulgarism to use the Perfect after a temporal 'since'.

<sup>3</sup> *Āyā* in reply to a question; *main abhī āyā* also signifies 'I'm coming back in a moment'; *vide* XLII, 7, 8.

you swallowed the medicine (just now) ?' but *Tum ne dawā āhā, ī hai ?* 'have you taken the medicine or some one else ?' vide 5.

5. In questions the Perfect indicates a certainty of the action having been done, as: *Tum ne yih kām kiyā hai ?* 'was it you who did this (or some one else) ?' but *Tum ne yih kiyā ?* 'have you done the thing I told you to do, or not ?' (the speaker does not know).

6. In such expressions as 'have you ever heard that—?' or 'have you ever seen—?' the Preterite is preferred to the Perfect, as: *Tum ne yih kabhi sunā* (or *sunā hai*) ?

7. When the English Perfect expresses time, as in such expressions as 'I have lived here for years', 'I have known him since childhood', the Urdu idiom requires the Present, as: *Jab se main puidā hū, ā* (or *hū, ā hūn*) *main kisi na-kisi mazhabat men giriftār rahtā hūn*, 'I have been unfortunate since I was born ;' 'I have for a long time seen you going about barefooted,' *bahut dinon se dekhtā hūn ki tum nange-pāon (se) chalā karte ho*. Vide XXXV, 1 (6).

8. 'Where have you been the last two hours ?' (to an absent servant), *tum do ghañte tak kahān rahi ?* or *do ghañte se tum kahān the ?* vide also XLIII, 5, last example.

9. The Perfect also indicates mild astonishment, i.e. that an action was not expected, especially in questions, as: *Kyā Amir Sāhib Kalkatta (men) ā, e hain ?* 'has the Amir come to Calcutta ? I didn't know he was coming ;' but *kyā ā, e ?* 'has the Amir yet arrived (I have heard he was coming) ?' vide also XLIV, 5, example (9), and note.

10. (a) In *baithnā, sonā, pārnā, kharā honā, gārnā* (and possibly one or two more intransitive verbs) the past participle with the substantive verb is used for the English Present, thus: *Baithā (hū, ā) hai*, 'he is sitting,' but *baithtā hai*, 'he sits habitually,' or 'is just going to sit down'; *Wuh kharā hai*, 'he is standing;' *Wuh kharā hotā hai*, 'he stands habitually,' or 'he is just going to stand up'.

(b) With *sotā*, either the above construction or the Present can be used, as: *Wuh soyā hai* (or *soyā hū,ā hai*) or *sotā hai*, 'he is sleeping.' *Wuh abhi baithā hai* (or *baith-gayā hai*), 'he has just sat down,' is Perfect; but *wuh ab-tak baithā* (or *baithā hū,ā*) *hai*, 'he is still sitting there,' is the participle construction. *Vide* also XLIX, 7.

11. A similar construction occurs with transitive verbs, as: *Likhā hai*, 'it is written,' for *likhā hū,ā hai*; but *us ne likhā hai*, 'he has written.'

12. In quoting an author either the Perfect or Present is used; *vide* Present Tense, XXXV, 6.

## XLII. PAST OR PRETERITE

1. As stated in XLI, 1, the Preterite, compared with the Perfect, refers to a definite point of time, as: 'He regrets his marriage,' *wuh sar pīltā hai ki 'main ne shādī kyūn kī'*<sup>1</sup> (lit. 'he beats his head saying, "Why did<sup>1</sup> I marry?"'); here the Perfect cannot be substituted, though, as the effects of the action continue, one might expect it; *vide* XLI, 3, also XL, 2.

2. The Preterite is used in narrating past events that closely follow on each other, and it will thus often take the place of the English Pluperfect, as: 'When I *had* rested a little and *had* refreshed myself, I got up intending to proceed on my way,' *jab main ne thorā dam le-liyā aur kuchh khā-pī-liyā main uth khāyā hū,ā aur chāhā ki āge chalān*; here the two first verbs could not be in the Pluperfect, as in the English.

3. The Preterite expresses an act just completed, and sometimes indicates ignorance or doubt, *vide* XLI, 5, and XLIII, 2 (b), as: *Main ne tujhe bakhsh-diyā agarchi munāsib-na-thā*, 'I have forgiven you (this moment), although I ought not to have done so;' *Ma'lūm hū,ā ki merī āwāz achchhī nahīn*,

<sup>1</sup> In modern Persian, however, the Perfect would be used, unless the time especially referred to the day of marriage.

*avr logon ko us se taklif hotī hai, āzān dene se tauba kī,*  
 'I have just learnt that I have an unmusical voice that  
 distresses my neighbours, so I have renounced on the spot  
 the idea of ever calling the *āzān*.' Here, if *hū,ō* *hai* were  
 substituted for *hū,ā*, it would indicate that he had learnt the  
 fact some days ago: *tauba kī*, 'on the spot;' but had a person  
 gone to him and requested him to call the *āzān* he might have  
 said *main ne tauba kī hai*, 'I have renounced the practice,'  
 vide Perfect, XLI, 4.

2. It is used in future conditions to indicate a foregone conclusion, as: *Agar rūpīya māngā to tumhen denā hī paregā*, 'If he asks for the money (as he will do) you have no choice but to give it,' vide 7 and LVI, 5 (b); *Maqdūr hotā, to qđhī ā-āet'ī ki māin ne kyā kiyā*, 'could I afford it I would say to you what I could do.'

3. The Preterite is sometimes colloquially, but rarely, used for the Aorist or Present Subjunctive, as: 'Stay here the whole day and read, but of course if you tire while reading there is no harm in your resting a minute or two,' *yahān din bhar baīthe roho aur parhte raho, hān is men mužāyaqa nahīn ki agar parhte parhte thak-ga,e to do chār minat ke liye dām liyā* (= *le-lo*); 'Doorkeeper, it is your duty to sit at the door the whole day and to inform me when any visitor arrives,' *gārbān tumhārā kām yih hai ki din bhar darwāze par baīthe rūhe, agar ko,ī merī mulāqāt ko āyā to mujhe iṭṭilā' dī* (or —*rāhe arr kisī ke āne par iṭṭilā' dī*); 'Neither have I the bodily strength to take only a lota and start wandering on foot, to turn up one day in Shiraz, to tarry another in Egypt, to spend a third in Najaf,' *na mujh men wuh tāqat-i jismānī ki ek lotā le-lūn aur piyāda-pā chal-dūn kabhī Shīrāz jā-nikalū, kabhī Miṣr men jā-īhāharā, kabhī Najaf men jā-pahunchā*.

6. Two Preterites coupled by 'and' express simultaneity, past, present, or future, as: *Tum khāre hū,e aur gīne*, 'as

<sup>1</sup> The Present Tense here would signify habitual action.

soon as you will stand up you will fall ;' *Ko, ī bachcha sote men royā aur tum bedār hū,īn*, '(O women) the moment a child cries in its sleep you are awake' (i.e. this is your habit) : *Gālī munh se niklī aur main ne mārā*, 'the abuse was no sooner out of his mouth than I hit him' (or 'will no sooner be out of his mouth than I'll hit him').

7. It is also used for an immediate Future<sup>1</sup> in anticipation of its completion, as : *Main ne yih kām abhī kiyā*, 'I am just going to do it.' Similarly, a servant says *lāyā sāhib*, 'I am just bringing it ;' *āyā*, 'I am just coming.'

REMARK.—The Preterite with *chuknā* is used ironically and indicates a negative future, as : *Main wahān jā-chukā* = 'catch me going' (lit. 'oh yes, I've gone there', ironical).

8. The Preterite is often used for the Perfect, as : *Main abhī āyā* (or *āyā hūn*), 'I have just come' (*vide* XLI, 2-4) ; *Jo bālen upar likhī ga,īn* (or *ga,ī hain*), 'what has been stated above' : *Main ne yih maşal is liye bayān kī* (or *kī hai*) *ki tum jāno ki*—, 'I have cited this proverb to show you that—.'

9. It is rarely used for the habitual Present, as : *Mujhe to bw-kārī man tumhen khatt likhne kā ek shughl hai* ; *qalam dawāt le-baithe aur do chār sañaren ghasīt-dālīn*, 'it is an employment for me to write to you when I have nothing to do ; I then sit down and scribble you a few lines ;' *Uskī 'ādat hai* (or *thī*) *ki har subh ko sokar utthā, munh hāth dhoyā, aur sair ko niklā*, 'it is (or was) his habit to rise early in the morning, wash his face and hands, and go for a walk.'

10. Note the following idioms : *Ab rahā yih amr ki*—, 'it now remains to be said that—' ; *Sāt dīna chauda ke chār, hāth lagā ek*, 'twice seven is fourteen, four and carry one' ; *Sāt men se tīn ga,e, bāqī rāhe chār*, 'three from seven leaves four' ; *Mere das rūpai kharch hū,e, sirf do rah-ga,e* (or *bach ga,e*), 'I spent 10 rupees and have only 2 left.'

11. *Vide* also XXXVI, 6, Remark I.

<sup>1</sup> The Perfect cannot be used as a Future.

## XLIII. PLUPERFECT

1. The Pluperfect indicates a time anterior to the Preterite or Perfect, as: *Jo ādmī kal āyā thā* (or incorrectly *āyā*) *so īj bhī aya<sup>1</sup> hai*, 'the man who came yesterday came to-day;' *Tumhāre ānc se pahle main khānā khā-chukā thā*, 'I had my dinner before you came.'

2. (a) The past time to which the Pluperfect is anterior may be only implied, as: *Us ko pār sāl hawā badalne se yūn hī sā fā, ida hū,ā thā*, 'last year he was just slightly benefited by a change of air;' here the Pluperfect indicates that the benefit has disappeared.

(b) To a master returning home and asking his servant whether the barber he had summoned has arrived or not, the following replies might be made:—*Āyā*,<sup>2</sup> 'he has come;' *ā-gayā*, 'he has just come;' *āyā hai*,<sup>1</sup> vulgar and incorrect (as he was expected); *āyā thā*, 'he did come, but has gone away again.' *Vide* also XLI, 1.

3. It is sometimes used for the Past Conditional Tense (*vide* Conditional Sentences, LVI, 14), as: *Agar āp mujhe na-bachāte main zarūr qaid hū,ā thā* (or *hojātā* or *hū,ā hotā*), 'had it not been for you, sir, I should certainly have been locked up.'

4. It is sometimes used to indicate distant time, as: *Bā'īd is ke ki main tere sāth aisi nekī kī thi, ab burā,ī kyūn kurne lagūn?* 'having previously treated you well, why should I now begin to treat you ill?' here the Preterite could be substituted, but would not indicate such remote time.

## 5. Examples—

I went to see the Khan Kal main Khān śāhib kī yesterday, but he was out,      mulāqāt ko gayā thā; kahīn so I didn't see him.      bāhar tashrif le-ga,e the, is wāsle wuh mujhe na-mile.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Ayā* *hai* if not expected, *āyā* if expected.

<sup>2</sup> *Āyā*, as he was expected.

<sup>3</sup> But *main unse na-milā*, 'I purposely did not have an interview with him,' and *wuh mujh se na-mile*, 'he refused me an interview.'

I was deaf, and now I am blind too.	<i>Pahle main bahrā (ho gayā) thā ab andhā bhī ho-gayā hūn<sup>1</sup> (or hūn).</i>
He told my servant yesterday that he was coming to see me to-day. <sup>2</sup>	<i>Us ne kal mere naukar se kahā thā ki kal<sup>3</sup> main tere sāhib se milne ā,ūngā.</i>
He had fever yesterday, but has none now.	<i>Hān, kal usko tap chārhī thi<sup>3</sup> [understood, lekin aj utarga,ī].</i>
I came to see you, sir, yesterday afternoon (but you were out).	<i>Banda kal si-pohar (ke waqt) huzur kī khidmat men hāzir hū,ā thā.</i>
I now (i.e. after the mutiny) sent him a plain unbound copy of the book. and yesterday got his reply acknowledging its receipt.	<i>Main ne ab ek kitāb-i sāda be jild un ko bhejī thi; kal unkā khatt mujh ko kitāb kī rasīd men milā.</i>
Where were you, where have you been? (to an absent servant on return).	<i>Kahān ga,e the (or kahān the)?</i>

#### XLIV. THE CONDITIONAL OR PAST CONDITIONAL TENSE

1. This is used in Conditional and Optative sentences, *vide* LVI, 1, 2, 7, 9–13, and 16. It may refer to time past or future, *vide* LVI, 1 and 7.

2. Its use as a Perfect Subjunctive is not, however, confined to conditional sentences. It is generally used after *chāhiye thā*, etc., ‘it was necessary,’ though the Aorist or Present Subjunctive may take its place—

<sup>1</sup> Perfect, blindness not expected, and ‘I am still blind’.

<sup>2</sup> *Kal* means ‘to-day’, as the previous tense is in the pluperfect.

<sup>3</sup> The Pluperfect indicates that it no longer remains.

You ought to have done it.

*Lāzim thā ki yih karte* (or *karo*) = *tum ko yih karnā thā* or *tum ko yih karnā chāhiye thā*.

3. The place of the Past Conditional may be supplied by the Pluperfect of *lagnā*, as : *Main wahān kyūn jāne lagā thā ?* = *main wahān kyūn jātā ?* 'why should I have gone there?' *Vide Aorist 6, b*, and 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 9, b (2).

4. Sometimes a verb compounded with *saknā* may take its place; *vide XL, 7, and VII, 8*.

5. Examples of the Past Conditional—

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (1) I had no book to read  | <i>Mere pās ko, ī kitāb na-thū jo</i><br>(lit. that I should have <i>parhtā</i> (or <i>parhūn</i> ).<br>read it) (or <i>parhūn</i> , 'that<br>I should read it'). |
| (2) I have not seen him for<br>the last few days, and so<br>could not mention your<br>letter (lit. that your letter<br>should have been men-<br>tioned). | <i>In dinon men us se merī</i><br><i>mulāqāt nahīn hū, ī hai jo</i><br><i>tumhāre khatt kā zikr ātā</i><br>(not <i>āve</i> ).                                     |
| (3) I perceived no beauty in<br>her to make me fall in love<br>with her.   | <i>Main ne us men kuchh khūb-<br/>śūratī na-dekhī ki us par</i><br>'āshiq hotā (or <i>ho-jā,ūn</i> ).   |
| (4) I had not a farthing with<br>me to give the beggar.  | <i>Mere pās ek paisā bhī na-<br/>thū jo us faqīr ko detā</i> (or<br><i>dūn</i> ).   |
| (5) You should merely have<br>written to me that you<br>received the prose com-<br>position.   | <i>Bāt itnī thi ki mujh ko likh<br/>bhejte ki naṣr ā, ī.</i>  |
| (6) I got no letter at all from<br>you, so how could I have<br>answered?   | <i>Tumhārā ko, ī khatt nahīn āyā</i><br><i>jis kā main jawāb likhtā ?</i>   |

- (7) I had composed nothing new, so how could I have sent you anything ? *Kaun sī fikr-i tāza<sup>1</sup> thi ki tumko likhtā ?*
- (8) How could I have had my books printed (as I had no money) ? *Main kitāben kahān se chap-wātā ?*
- (9) He ought to have received the journal too, but up to the present he has not done so. *Lāzim thā ki us ke pās bhī akhbār pahunch-jātā, magar is waqt taknahīn pahunchā.<sup>2</sup>*
- (10) How could I possibly have refrained from answering your letter? *Kyā imkān thā ki jawāb nālikhtā ?*
- (11) My description would be understood by you, only if you were here to see the Begams in the Fort walking about. *Merā bayān jab tum par khultā ki tum yahān hote aur begamāt-i qil'a ko phirte chalte dekhte.*

#### XLV. THE VERBAL SUFFIX -WĀLĀ

1. Though -wālā cannot be added to an adjective (*vide 'Hindustani Stepping Stones'*, Lesson 29, a), it is added to prepositions and adverbs, as: *Pahāṛi kā upar-wālā makān*, 'the house higher up on the hill'; *Upar-wālā bayān*, 'what has been mentioned above.'

NOTE.— It must be recollectcd that prepositions were originally nouns, and that such expressions as *pahāṛ ke nīche men* ('at the bottom of the hill') are still used by the vulgar.

2. -Wālā can often be conveniently substituted for a genitive, as: *Uskā sawārī kā ghora* or *uskā sawārī-wālā ghora*.

3. It sometimes indicates habit or continuance, as: *Yih*

<sup>1</sup> *Fikr-i tāza*, tech. = a new poem.

<sup>2</sup> Not *pahunchā hai*, as its arrival was expected.

*dunyā girgit kī tarah rang badalne-wālī hai*, 'this world changes every moment like a chameleon;' *Parhne-wālā larkā*, 'a studious boy.'

4. Sometimes it indicates a past act and sometimes one in the immediate<sup>1</sup> future, as : *Iskā bechne-wālā*, 'the man who sold it,' 'the seller ;' *Marne-wālā*, 'the late,' and also 'about to die'.

5. It will be seen, therefore, that this verbal may be ambiguous: *Sone-wālī bhiron ko na-jagānā chāhiye* for 'don't rouse sleeping hornets'<sup>2</sup> (i.e. 'let sleeping dogs lie') would be ambiguous, as it might mean 'hornets about to sleep'; the idiom, therefore, is *sotī (hū, ī) bhiron ko na-jagānā chāhiye*, which admits of no ambiguity. *Dono larne-wālc* is a common example of the ambiguous use of this participle.

#### XLVI. CONJUNCTIVE PARTICIPLE

1. (a) This participle is generally used when the action of the second verb not only takes place after the first verb *but also depends on it*, as : *Wuh mujhe dekh-kar rone lagā*, 'he began to cry on seeing me.' This participle is advantageously used when one verb is transitive and the other neuter. 'He saw me and then began to cry' is *us ne mujhe dekhā aur phir rone lagā*; in this sentence *phir* could not be omitted as the idea is that 'he first saw me and then after a little time began to cry'. Hence *us ne merī taraf mukhātib hokar kahā*, 'he addressed me and said,' is more idiomatic than *merī taraf mukhātib hū, ā aur bolā*. (Note, too, that in this sentence, as the first verb *hū, ā* is neuter, *bolā*, a verb that does not require *ne*, is preferred to *kahā*.)

<sup>1</sup> In *Insān marne-wālā hai* the idea is that death is always present, and the immediate future and not the remote future is intended. *Qiyāmat āne-wālī hai*, because the Judgment Day is certain, that is, it is practically with us.

<sup>2</sup> *Bhir*, f. = hornet or wasp. In Behar *birnī* = wasp and *birnā* or *haddā* = a hornet.

(b) However, to avoid a series of conjunctive participles, the above rule is usually broken, finite verbs being substituted; but the finite verbs should be used where there are the longest pauses in the thought or the action, as : *Main kitāb baghal men dabākar ghar se nikalā*, 'I put the book under my arm and left the house ;' but *Main ne kitāb baghal men debā, i aur chhari hāth men lekar ghar se nikalā*, 'I put the book under my arm and taking up my stick quitted the house.'

2. The Conjunctive Participle cannot precede the substantive verb *hai*, etc., and *thā*, etc.

3. (a) When the Conjunctive Participle and the finite verb are both negative, the negative particle is prefixed to the finite verb only, as : *Jo ko, ī imtihān 'pās' karke tā, ip rā, iñing na-sikhegā usko is daftar men jagah na-milegi*, 'no one will be employed in this office who does not pass the examination and learn typewriting' (lit. 'whoever having passed the examination does not learn typewriting, no place will be given to him in this office').<sup>1</sup>

(b) If the participle only is negative and if it also implies a reason (i.e. if it expresses a reason and is bound up with the finite verb, as explained in 1), the negative particle may be prefixed, as : *Main us kī bāt kuchh na-samajhkar chupkā ho-rahā*, 'not understanding what he said I remained silent' (i.e. because I did not understand what he said—). The Conjunctive Participle with a negative always implies a reason.

With the above exception the negative cannot be prefixed to the Conjunctive Participle. 'Saying not a single word he turned and left the room' must be rendered *Wuh mujhe ek lafz bhī kahē baghair munh pher-kar chalā gayā* ('without saying a single word . . .').

4. (a) The passive of the Conjunctive Participle is not used; its place is taken by the active, as : *Wuh hāth bāndhkar*

<sup>1</sup> Compare the English sentence, 'Whoever does not pass an examination and [does not] learn typewriting . . .'

*lāyā gayā*, 'he was brought bound' (i.e. 'they having bound his hands<sup>1</sup> he was brought'); *Qil'a surang lagā-kar urāyā gayā*, 'the fort was blown up.'

(b) If, however, the finite verb is neuter, the Conjunctive Participle also must be neuter, as: *Wuh giriftār hokar āyā* (not *lāyā gayā*), 'he was arrested and brought'; *Kaprā dhulkar āyā* or *dhokar lāyā gayā*, 'the clothes have come back from the wash.'

5. By a confusion of thought, not unnatural, the verb *milkā* is sometimes regarded as though it were the passive of a transitive verb, and such a sentence as *Un ke hisse qur'a dālkar unhen mile*, 'their shares were apportioned by lot,' is incorrectly written for *Unke hisse qur'a dālkar unhen diye ya,e.*

6. This participle repeated as below gives the force of continual repetition, i.e. of continual but not of continuous action, which latter has to be expressed by the Present Participle repeated; *vide* Pres. Part., XLVII, 8 (a). *Main ne ghore ko dāna khilā-khilā-ke moṭā kiyā*, 'I fattened the horse by feeding it on grain for some time'; *Phūl tor-tor-ke main ne apne dāmen men jama' kiye*, 'continually plucking flowers (either here and there or from one bush) I filled my skirt'; *Inten ko jor-jor-ke main ne ek dīwār tayār kar-dī*, 'adding brick to brick I built up a wall.'

7. Greaves in his 'Hindi Grammar' states that the relation of the Conjunctive Participle with the finite verb is (a) temporal, (b) logical, (c) adverbial. Examples of this classification are given below. It will, however, be seen that this participle generally, perhaps always, can be resolved into a temporal clause.

(a) Temporal. It refers to a time either antecedent to or simultaneous with the finite verb, as: *Main ne hāth dho-kar*

<sup>1</sup> Misrelated participle. *Wuh hāth bandhā hū,ā lāyā gayā*, 'he was brought bound.'

*khānā khāyā*, 'I washed my hands and ate my dinner ;' *Us ne ro-kar kahā*, 'he said with tears in his eyes ;' *Yih log namāz bhī gā-kar parhte hain*, 'these people (a sect of Sufis) even sing their prayers.' (Note that *gānā* is an intransitive verb and does not admit of an object, except a cognate object, as *gīt* or *ghazl gānā*; but not *mashnavī gānā* or *qasīda gānā*.)

This participle also means 'after' (temporal), as : *Kyā ko, ī Isfahān jā-kar Hindustān men wāpas ātā hai?* 'does anyone ever return to India after he has once seen Isfahan ?' i.e. 'is there anyone who, having once gone (or when he has once gone) to Isfahan, afterwards returns to India ?'; *Sab milā-kar sau ek hū,e*, 'after adding them all together they proved to be about a hundred.'

(b) Logical. *Us ko zahr de-kar mār-dālā = zahr dene se us ko mār-dālā*, 'they killed him by poison ;' *Us ne lakriyān bech-bech kar paise jauna kiye*, 'he collected money by continually selling firewood' (by means of selling firewood). Here the finite verbs express the consequence of the participles.

(c) Adverbial. *Kān lagā-kar suno*, 'listen attentively' (having applied your ear, or when you have applied your ear, listen attentively); *yaqīn kar-ke jāno = yaqīn jāno*, 'know assuredly ;' *khāṣṣ kar-ke*, 'especially ;' *bārī-kar*, 'more ;' *wuh pet bhar-kar be-wuqūf hai*, 'he is an utter fool ;' *wuh der lagā-kar ḍīyā*, 'he came late ;' *le de-ke*, 'in all ;' *marpit kar*, 'with great labour or difficulty ;' *us larke ne sivā,e ro-kar khānā māngne ke, aur kuchh na-kiyā*, 'the child did nothing but tearfully call for food.'

8. In 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 9, c, reference was made to the 'misrelated participle'. A study of the following idiomatically correct examples will reveal the fact that though grammatically the finite verb and the participle have not the same subject, logically they often have.

I couldn't help laughing when *Tumhārā -khatt parh - kar*  
I read your letter. *— rūpujhe hānsī ā,ī.*

I got fever on reaching home. *Mujh ko ghar jā-ke bulhār āyā.*

I was very glad to read your letter. *Tumhārā khatt parh-kar merā dil bahut khush hū,ā.*

The culprit was arrested and brought here. *Mujrim giriftār kar-ke<sup>1</sup> lāyā gāyā = mujrim giriftār ho kar āyā.*

If they are compared, the difference between them will be proved to be slight. *Agar donon ek dūsre se milākar dekhe-jā,en, to un men bahut hī kam farq naazar ā,egā.*

If I should come across any pamphlet (on the subject), it will be bought and sent to you. *Agar ko,ī risāla ā-jā,egā to wuh mol-lekar khidmat men bhej-diyā jā,egā.<sup>2</sup>*

The court order having been written, the decision was given out. *Rū - ba - kār likh - kar hukm hū,ā.<sup>3</sup>*

A letter to the following *Khatt men likh-kar āyā ki . . .* purport was received.

9. The Participle may refer to the direct object of a verb, as : *Wuh Mīr Sarfarāz Husain kī, sharmā-kar, ānkhen nīche karū īir muskarānā, Khudā kabhī mujh ko bhī wuh śūrat dīkhā,e, 'I do wish I could get a sight of Mir Sarfaraz Husain shyly casting down his eyes like that and smiling.'*

10. (a) The following example from Platts is difficult to explain :—

<sup>1</sup> *Kar-ke = kiyā jōkar*, which is not idiom. The grammatical subject of a passive verb is the logical object of the action, *vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 23, c ; hence this sentence = 'they having arrested the culprit brought him'.

<sup>2</sup> Here the Passive is used for politeness to avoid the use of 'I'.

<sup>3</sup> Here, though the participle and finite verb refer to different persons, they are regarded as the same party, i.e. members of the court.

At last, having made me *Akkhir wa'da un chizon ko*  
 promise and swear that I *pahunchā-kar mere<sup>1</sup> phir*  
 would return after leaving *āne kā le-kar, aur qasam*  
 those things (at home), he *khilā-kar, rukhsat kiyā.*  
 let me go.

(b) The danger of imitating the above construction is illustrated by the following: *Hindū, on ko ek na, ī 'arzī pesh karke jawāb-i khushk o sāf milā,* 'the Hindus, on presenting a fresh petition, received a rebuff;' this is wrong, as it would signify that the petition was given to the Hindus. In *Mujhe ghar jāke bukhār hū, ā* there can be no ambiguity as there is only one person. Similarly, *Jab tak tum ko imtihān pās karke kisi bare 'uhde par muqarrar hote hū, e na-dekh-lenge—*, 'until I see you pass your examination and appointed to a good post I—,' cannot, owing to the position of *tum ko*, be misunderstood, but *Jab tak imtihān pās karke tum ko kisi bare 'uhde par muqarrar hote hū, e na-dekh-lenge—* is ambiguous, as the Conjunctive Participle might refer either to the subject or the object of the finite verb.

11. In orders, requests, and answers to requests the termination *ke* or *kar* of this participle is preferably dropped, as: *Roṭī khā-ā,o*, 'go and eat and then come back;' *Kyā main roṭī khā-ā,ūn?* 'may I go and get my food and then come back?' (Host) *Āp roṭī khā-ā,iye*, 'please go now and get something to eat and then come back;' (Guest) *Achchhā main roṭī khā-ātā hūn*, 'all right, I will' (vide also Aorist 8 and notes).

12. The following is an idiomatic use of *karke*: *Main tumhen kya karke likhūn—Munshi, Maulavi, Mufti, Khwāja yā Shaikh?* 'how am I to style you in the address—Munshi,

<sup>1</sup> *Mere* should come before *pahunchā-kar*, and *phir āne kā* may be taken as an equivalent of a finite verb to the first clause of a compound sentence. Amended, the sentence runs: *Akkhir mujh se yih wa'da lekar aur qasam khilā-kar (ki main un chizon ko pahunchā kar phir ā,ūn) rukhsat kiyā.*

Maulavi, etc., or Shaikh ?' *Bāre Khudā Khudā karke merā safar tamām hū,ā*, 'at last with great difficulty (or somehow or other) my journey was finished ;' *Main 'Alī 'Alī karke us daryā men kūd-parā*, 'calling on 'Alī I jumped into the river.' *Ek ek karke*, 'one by one ;' but *In ādmīyon ko ek ek kirkē<sup>1</sup> mār-dālo* is idiomatically 'kill these men to a man'. '

REMARK.—Occasionally *karke* is pleonastic, as : *Aşl men merā nām Muhammād Bakhsh hai lekin Mammū karke nāh, hār hūn* (or *Mammū Mammū mash, hūr hūn*), 'in reality my name is Muhammād Bakhsh, but I am known as Mammū :' *Auron kī nisbat karke*, 'compared with others.'

13. (a) The participle *ho-kar* sometimes has the force of 'although', as : *Bādshāh ho-kar boriyā par soyā kartā thā*, 'although a king he habitually slept on a mat ;' *Tum Musalman ho-kar sharāb pīte ho ?* 'do you, a Muslim, drink ?' 'although you are a Muslim you still drink ?' *Tum ko ilne bare ho-kur sharm nahīn ātī ?* 'at your age and not ashamed ?'

(b) Note the difference in meaning in the following :—

I will go to Bombay via Main Jabalpūr se hokar Jubblepore, or Bamba, ī jā, ūngā.

I will halt a day or so in Jubblepore on my way to Bombay.

I will go to Bombay via Main Jabalpūr hokar (without Jubblepore without halting. out se) Bamba, ī jā, ūngā.

I will halt a day or so in Main Jabalpūr (se) hotā hū,ā Jubblepore on my way to Bamba, ī jā, ūngā. Bombay.

#### XLVII. THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

1. The Present (*girtā* or *girtā hū,ā* and *kartā* or *kartā hū,ā*) and the Past (*girā* or *girā hū,ā* and *kiyā* or *kiyā hū,ā*)

<sup>1</sup> *Ek dūsre ke ba'd mār-dālo*, 'kill them one by one.'

Participles are used as (1) nouns, (2) verbal nouns, (3) adjectives, (4) adverbs, (5) participles with the force of verbs, and (6) compounds with other verbs. Their proper use when participles is rather intricate and puzzling even to natives, who not infrequently use them improperly. The grammars, too, are not always correct. The participles are perhaps correctly used only in Delhi and Lucknow.

2. The Present Participle is used as a noun or a verbal noun. If a preposition be added, *hū,ā* must be omitted. Examples—*Sote se*, 'from sleep,' 'from sleeping;' *din charhie charhte* = *din charhne ke waqt*, 'about 7 or 8 o'clock' (i.e. while the sun was on its upward course and not crossing the sky'); *din dūbte dūbte*, 'before sunset;' *sunte ke sāth* = *sunte hī* = *sunne ke sāth*, 'immediately on hearing this'; *mere hote* (*hū,e*), 'while I am here,' or 'while I am living'; *mere rahte* (not *hū,r*) *tak*, 'as long as I am here:' *hāth pāon ke hote* (or *rahte*), 'whilst in the possession of hands and feet.'

REMARK.—In such sentences as *Martā* (*hū,ā*) *kyā na-kartā?* 'what will not a dying man try?' *martā* is an adjective, agreeing with *ādmī*, 'understood;' you cannot say *marte ne kahā*; the idiom is *marne-wāle ne kahā*.

3. (a) The inflected present participle with *hī*, indicating simultaneity, is sometimes called the adverbial participle. It may have the same or a different subject from the finite verb, and may itself be either a substantive or a verb, as: *Hukm milte hī main rawāna hū,ā*, 'I started as soon as I got the order;' *Mere<sup>1</sup> hukm dete hī wuh chalā-gayā*, 'as soon as I gave the order he went away;' *Mujhe, sunte hī, yih khiyāl āyā ki*—, 'as soon as I heard this, this thought came into my mind that—;' *Mere jāgte hī pānī khul-gayā*, 'as soon as I awoke the rain stopped;' *Mere (usko) dekhte hī wuh*

<sup>1</sup> Compare *do bajte bajte*, 'by the time it is 2 and not after that.'

<sup>2</sup> This might also mean 'as soon as he gave me the order he went away'. In *mujhe hukm dete hī* there is no ambiguity.

*ut̄h-baithā*, 'as soon as I saw him he sat up ;' *Mujhe<sup>1</sup> dekhte hī chor bhāg-ga,e*, 'as soon as the thieves saw me they fled.'

(b) The *hī* is sometimes omitted, as : *Main ne usko dekhte (hī) kahā ki yih ādmī bad-mu'āsh hai*, 'as soon as I saw him I said he was a blackguard.'

(c) This adverbial participle with the Future Tense signifies 'gradually', as : *Yih bimārī jāte hī jā,egī*, 'this disease will go away gradually' = *jāte jāte jā,egī*.

(d) *Chhūtē hī* is an idiom for 'all of a sudden'.

(e) In the following similar idioms the *hī* does not express simultaneity : *Mere dekhte hī dekhte wuh paidā bhī hū,ā, jurrān bhī hū,ā, aulād-wālā bhī hū,ā, aur marā bhī*, 'during my memory he was born, grew up, became a father, and died ;' *dekhte hī dekhte* expresses continuity.

REMARK.—The emphatic particle *hī* can of course follow the present participle when used as an ordinary adjective in apposition, etc., as : *Usko sotā hī chhor do*, 'leave him just as he is, asleep.'

4. When the present participle is a *qualifying* adjective and precedes its noun (not when it is in apposition to a noun or expresses state), it agrees with its noun in gender and number. *Hū,ā* can be added, except in certain idiomatic phrases. *Chaltā (hū,ā) kār-khāna*, 'a thriving business ;' *bhāgtī (hū,ī) fanj*, 'a fleeing army ;' *bolī hū,ī toṭī*, 'a talking parrot ;' *marte dām tak*, 'till my dying breath,' 'till I die.'

REMARK.—Sometimes the substantive is understood, as *rāh-chaltā*, 'a wayfarer,' for *rāh chaltā hū,ā ādmī* : *Larzon ke pichhe bhāgton ke āge* (of a coward), 'in the rear of the fighters, in the van of the fleers, a laggard in fighting, a leader in flight ;' *vide* Remark to 2.

5. With transitive verbs always, and with intransitive sometimes, the noun of agency takes the place of the present participle when used as a noun, as : *Mere ihsān, kāyne-wāle*

<sup>1</sup> *Mujhe* is the object of *dekhte*.

*dost ne yih mujh se kahā thā—, 'my kind friend said to me—; Us jāne-wāle ādmī se pūchho ki kahān jātā hai, 'ask that passer-by where he is going to.'*

REMARK.—*Marne-wālā* (*Rājā*) idiomatically means the 'late, deceased (*Raja*, etc.);' but *jān ba-lab Rājā* or *Rājā jo gor men pāon laṭkā, e hū,e hai*, 'the dying *Raja*', or vulgarly *wuh Rājā jo dam tor-rahā hai* or *jo marne kināre* (or *marne ke kināre*) *hai*.

6. As adverbs<sup>1</sup>: *Hote hote*, 'gradually'; *subh hote* (or *hote hī*), 'at dawn,' 'as soon as it was morning or dawn.'

7. Up to the present this participle has presented little difficulty. The difficulty of the participles, past and present, lies in their participial use when they express the state of the subject or object and have the force of verbs. In 'that singing woman', 'singing' is an adjective; but in 'that woman, singing as she went', or 'that woman departed singing', the participle 'singing' has all the force of a verb.

8. (a) When the present participle is repeated for emphasis, etc., it is inflected, i.e. constructed adverbially or absolutely, and *hū,e* cannot be added, as: *Darte darte pās gayā* (or *dartā hū,ā pās gayā*), 'I approached, fearing the while'; *Shikār khelte khelte thak-gayā*, 'I got tired with continuous hunting, shooting,' etc.; *Koshish karte karte thak-gayā*, 'I became wearied with my continuous efforts'; but *Koshish kar kar ke thak-gayā*, 'I became wearied by my continual efforts (on different occasions);' *Mere sūra-e Yā Sīn parhte hi parhte uskā dam nikal gayā*, 'while I was still repeating the chapter *Yā Sīn* he died.'

(b) Sometimes a verb is used with a cognate participle present repeated, as: *Main pahār kī chontī tak charte charte charh-gayā*, 'going on ascending I at last reached the hill-summit'; *Kishtī dūbte dūbte dūb-ga,ī*, 'the ship sank by degrees.'

<sup>1</sup> 'Laughingly' and 'distractedly' are examples of participle adverbs in English.

(c) If, however, the present participle is not repeated and refers to the subject of an active verb, not being the agent with *ne*, it agrees with its subject, and *hū,ā* should be added, as : *Main shahr men hanstā hū,ā pahunchā*, 'I arrived in the city laughing;' but *Main hanste hanste shahr men pahunchā*, 'I arrived with ease at the city ;' *Shikār kheltā hū,ā shahr men pahunchā*; *Yih kahtī hū,ī chalī ga,ī*, 'she went away saying this ;' but *Yih kahtī chalī ga,ī*, 'she went on saying this.'<sup>1</sup>

(d) If, however, the finite verb be in the passive, the participle may agree either with the grammatical subject or the logical subject, as : *Main rūpiya churātā (hū,ā) pakarā gayā*, 'I was caught while stealing money,' or *Main rūpiya churātē (hū,e) (men) pakarā gayā*, 'I was caught in the act of stealing money.'

9. (a) When the present participle indicates the state of the *object*, the object will usually be followed by the post-position *ko*, and one would expect, therefore, that the rules for the concord of adjectives in such cases would apply. This, however, is not the case.

(b) When the present participle indicates state and refers to a direct object with *ko*, it may either be constructed absolutely with or without *hū,e*, or it may follow the rule of the concord of adjectives and be, with or without *hū,ā*, in the masculine, as : *Main ne us ko daurte (hū,e) dekhā* or *main ne us ko daurtā (hū,ā) dekhā*. But with some verbs the inflected form only is used, as after *sunnā*.

(c) If, however, the object is not followed by *ko*, the participle may either agree with it or be constructed absolutely, as : *Main ne us bastī men bijlī girtī (hū,ī) dekhī*, or *girte (hū,e) dekhī*, 'I saw a thunderbolt fall in that village.'

10. When the Present Participle predicates something of an agent with *ne*, it must be constructed absolutely with *hū,e*. In such cases special attention must be paid to the position of the participle, otherwise it may not be clear whether the participle

<sup>1</sup> *Yih kahkar chali ga,ī* = 'she said this and then went away'.

refers to the agent or to the object. If the participle refers to the agent it is better to place it before the agent, and *hū,e* must be added. If it refers to the object it should follow the object, and *hū,e* may be omitted. '*Aurat ne chalte<sup>1</sup> hū,e kahā ki*'—, 'the woman said on departure—' (but *Chaltī hū,t<sup>2</sup>* 'aurat ne kahā—', 'the moving<sup>2</sup> woman, the woman moving about, said—'). In the preceding there can be no ambiguity, but *Chalte hū,e aurat ne mujh se kahā* may mean either the 'woman said on her' or 'on my departure'; '*Aurat ne chalte hū,e mujh se kahā* would generally mean 'the woman as she was departing said to me—'.

*Main ne jāgte hū,e dekhā* may mean (1) 'I saw him while I was awake', (2) 'I saw him while he was awake', (3) 'I saw him waking up'; but *main ne jāgte dekhā* can have the last two meanings only. In *main ne us ko daurte (hū,e) dekhā* the position of the participle shows that it refers to the object, but *main ne daurte hū,e us ko dekhā* is ambiguous, as the participle may refer to either the agent or the object, but in *daurte hū,e main ne us ko dekhā* the participle can refer only to the agent. ~

11. If the participle can agree neither with the subject nor the direct object it is constructed absolutely, as: *Mujhe is ghar men rahte (hū,e)* (or *ā,e hū,e*) *do sāl guzre*, 'I have been in this house now two years;'  
*Mujhe sārā din talāsh karte guzra*, 'I spent the whole day looking for it;'  
*Mujh ko khānā pakāte ek ghanṭā hū,ā* (or *guzrā*), 'I have been cooking the meal for an hour past;'  
*Āp ko hamesha shikār khelte rahnā achchhā nahīn hai*, 'you should not spend all your time in sport.'

12. (a) The inflected present participle before *darnā* is idiomatically used for the Infinitive in English, as: *Jāte (hū,e) darta hūn*, 'I am afraid to go there.'

<sup>1</sup> '*Aurat ne chalte kahā* would mean '*aurat ne chalte hī kahā*.

<sup>2</sup> Idiomatically, however, *chaltī hū,ā* means 'artful', 'cunning', and not 'moving'.

(b) With *sharm ānā*, 'to be ashamed,' and *dar lagnā*, 'to be afraid,' the participle may have two significations, as : *Mujhe wahān jāte* (*hū,c*) *dar lagtā hai*, 'I am afraid to go there,' or 'I fear while or when going there'.

13. The following are idioms: *Yih kām hotā nażar nahīn ātā*, 'this is not likely to be done ;' *Mujhe yihī kahte* (*hū,c*) *ban-ātā hai ki wuh ullū kā patṭhā<sup>1</sup> hai*, 'I cannot help saying he's an ass' (lit. 'a young owl').

14. For the idiomatic uses of the Present Participle prefixed to *jānā*, *vide* verbs compounded with participles, XLIX, 8.

### 15. Examples—

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (1) You came home while I was awake.   | <i>Mere jāgte</i> ( <i>hū,c</i> ) <i>men tum ghar ā,e.</i>                |
| (2) After lying awake a long time I at last fell asleep.   | <i>Jāgte jāgte ākhir so-gayā.</i>   |
| (3) Fatima returned by way of the bazar.   | <i>Fāṭīma<sup>2</sup> bāzār</i> ( <i>sc</i> ) <i>hotī hū,ī wāpās ā,ī.</i> |
| (4) I saw the woman in the act of waking up (or I saw the woman awake, not asleep).                          | <i>Main ne 'aurat ko jāgte dekhā.</i>                                     |
| (5) She was afraid to say this.  | <i>Yih kahte</i> ( <i>hū,c</i> ) <i>dari.</i>                             |
| (6) She ran off while saying this.   | <i>Wuh yih kahī hū,ī bhāgī.</i>   |
| (7) While I'm still living (or am here) why should you look for others' favours (or be dependent on others)? | <i>Mere rahie tum kyūn dūsrone ke dast-nigar hone lage ?</i>              |

<sup>1</sup> *Patīhū*, m., and *patīhī*, f., generally the young of pigeons and fowls; squab, pullet.

<sup>2</sup> *Fattū* is a corruption for *Fataḥ Muhammad* or *Fāṭīma*. In the Panjab the latter is sometimes *Fāṭū*.

- (8) I am afraid to tell you. *Kahte (hū,e) ḫartā hūn.*
- (9) I saw a flock of cranes grazing in a field. *Main ne ek kulang kā ghol khet men charte (hū,e) dekhā.*
- (10) I saw a jackal run into that sugar-cane *khet.* *Main ne ek gīdar ko us ganne ke khet men daur-kar jāte (hū,e) dekhā.*
- (11) I saw a jackal running about in the sugar-cane. *Main ne dekhā ki ek gīdar us ganne ke khet men danrā jā-rahā hai.<sup>1</sup>*
- (12) I saw a singing woman dancing, singing, and playing a guitar. *Main ne domnī<sup>2</sup> ko nāchte, gāte aur tārā bajāte (hū,e)<sup>3</sup> dekhā.*
- (13) He has never seen a horse shod. *Us ne kabhi ghore kā na'l bandhte (hū,e) (or bāndhte)<sup>4</sup> nahīn dekhā hai.*
- (14) Don't you feel ashamed to do this? *Tum ko yih kām karte (hū,e) sharm nahīn atī?*
- (15) Are you not afraid to go up in a balloon? (also are you not afraid while up in a balloon?). *Tum ko ghubāre par urte dar nahīn lagtā?*
- (16) As far as I know. *Mere jānte-bhar (vulg.) or mere jānte men.*
- (17) As far as I am able. *Mere bhar-sak<sup>5</sup> (vulg. for apne magdūr bhar).*

<sup>1</sup> *Daurtā hai* would signify *daurā-phirtā hai*, 'running hither and thither.'

<sup>2</sup> *Domnī* also means a woman of the *Dom* tribe, an aboriginal Hindu tribe something like the gypsies. The Muslim *Doms* are singers.

<sup>3</sup> Note that with several participles, *hū,a* or *hū,e*, if added, is added to the last only.

<sup>4</sup> If *bāndhte* (*hū,e*) is used *kisi ko* is understood, but with *bandhie* (*hū,e*) there is no omission.

<sup>5</sup> *Mere sakte bhar* appears to be obsolete or local.

- (18) Come to me to-morrow at ten minutes to 12. *Kal bārah bajc īmen* (or vulg. *ko) das minat<sup>1</sup> rahte hū,e mere pās ā,o.*
- (19) The weakness will go away gradually. *Z'uf jāte hī jā,egā* (or *jāte jāte jā,egā*).
- (20) Though in the possession of eyes you were blind (or else you pretended to be blind). *Ānkhon ke<sup>2</sup> hote* (or *rahte*) *tum andhe ban-ga,c.*

### XLVIII. PAST PARTICIPLE

1. It is used as—

(a) A noun: *Kahc sc*, ‘by order;’ *jawān hū,e par*, ‘on growing up;’ *munh lagā,c se wuh is qadr shokh hū,ā*, ‘he has become so impertinent through your familiarity;’ ‘through your being so familiar with him;’ *māngc kā tatiū*, ‘a borrowed pony.’<sup>3</sup>

REMARK.—*Mū,ā* (*hū,ā*), ‘dead,’ is an adjective agreeing with *ādmī*, understood: *Soyā aur mū,ā barābar hotā hai*, ‘a sleeping and a dead man are alike.’ *Mū,ā* is only a substantive when used by women as a term of abuse, as: *Us mū,c sc kaho ki yahān sc dūr<sup>4</sup> dafa' ho-jā,c*, ‘tell that blackguard to quit.’

(b) With the prepositions *be*, *baghair*, and *bin*, ‘without,’ the inflected past participle (with or without *hū,e*) is used without *ke*, as: *Baghair marīz ko dekhc* (*hū,e*), or *marīz ko dekhc* (*hū,e*) *baghair* (= *marīz ko dekhne ke baghair*), ‘without seeing the patient.’

(c) It will be seen that the Infinitive can, in such cases, be

<sup>1</sup> In the Panjab *das minat kam bārah bajc*.

<sup>2</sup> Or *Ānkhēn hote*.

<sup>3</sup> *Māngū hū,ā* is not the idiom.

<sup>4</sup> Hence the vulgar verb *durdurānā*, ‘to say *dūr ho-jā,o*:’ *Main wahān gayā lekin us-ne mujhe durdurā-diyā*, for *dhatā batānā* or *dhutkār denā*.

substituted for the participle: *Ādhī rāt guzre tak*, 'till midnight,' is the same as *ādhī rāt ke guzarne tak*.

REMARK.—When the past participle takes the place of an infinitive, *hū,e* cannot be added, except after or before *baghair*, etc. In *mujhe* (not *mere*) *ā,e hū,e ek ghantā hū,ā* the participle is not a noun.

2. (a) As an adjective, qualifying or predicative: *Dabe pā,on (se)*, 'with silent footfall'; *dabī zabān (se)*, 'with bated breath,' i.e. 'fearfully'; *ulṭe pā,on (se) phirā*, 'he retraced his steps'; *ā,e din kā kām*, 'the work that comes every day,' 'daily work'; *dastar-khwāñ<sup>2</sup>* *bichhā (hū,ā) thā*, 'the table-cloth was spread'; *sahn men bahut se patte pare (hū,e) hain*, 'the courtyard is full of leaves.'

(b) As a rule *hū,ā* can be added (except in adverbial phrases like the above), as: *Dūbtī (hū,ī) kishtī*, 'the sinking ship'; *ānkhon (kī<sup>3</sup>) dekhī (hū,ī) bāt*, 'an eye-witnessed matter.'

3. (a) When the past participle of a *transitive* verb expresses state, it is always constructed absolutely, with or without *hū,e*, as: *Kurtī pahne (hū,e) ā,ī*, 'she came wearing a jacket'; *Mujhe roṭī khā,c (hū,e) tīn din guzre*, 'I have not eaten for three days'; *Wuh bahāna kiye hū,e thā*,<sup>4</sup> 'he was pretending all that-time'; *Wuh hathkarī<sup>5</sup> pahne hū,e* (or *pahnā,c hū,e<sup>6</sup>*) *pesh kiyā gayā*, 'he was produced handcuffed.'

(b) The conjunctive participle indicates that an act was completed, as: *Kurtī pahin-kar ā,ī*, 'she first put on a jacket and then came'; but the past participle indicates a state,

<sup>1</sup> *Mere ā,e hū,e*, though sometimes used, is incorrect.

<sup>2</sup> *Dastar-khwāñ* in Urdu is an ordinary tablecloth, but in Persian 'sufra' is an ordinary tablecloth.

<sup>3</sup> After *ānkhon*, *kī* or *se* is understood. *Ankhon, dekhne-wālē kā bayāñ*, 'the report of an eye-witness'; *Ankhon dekhī bhaṭ pāre, main ne kānon sunī thī*, 'eye-witness be d—d, I've heard it' (said of a credulous man).

<sup>4</sup> For compound verbs of this description *vide* XLIX, 7.

<sup>5</sup> Or *hathkariyāñ*.

<sup>6</sup> Causal, 'having been made to wear.'

as: *Kurtī pahne hū,e ā,ī*, 'she came in a state of wearing a jacket;' but *Kurtī pahintī hū,ī ā,ī*, 'she came while in the act of putting on her jacket.' Sometimes the conjunctive and the past participles are interchangeable, as: *Pā,on phailā-kar sonā* or *pā,on phailā,c (hū,e) sonā*, 'to sleep at ease.'

REMARK.—It will have been noticed that the uninflected past participles of *transitive* verbs have sometimes a passive sense, as: *Merā kiyā (hū,ā)*, 'what has been done by me;' *us kā banayā (hū,ā)*, 'made by him;' but *liye hū,e*, trans., 'taking.'

4. (a) When the past participle of an *intransitive* verb is repeated for emphasis, etc., it may be inflected as in the case of the present participle, or may not be: *Main dhūp men baithē baithē* (or *baithā baithā*) *garmā-gayā*,<sup>1</sup> 'I sat in the sun till I became warm.'

(b) The following are idioms: *Tum do baras ke ga,e ga,e āj mujh se milne ā,e ho*, 'after having absented yourself two years you have to-day come to see me;' but *Main do baras kī gayā gayā* (not *ga,e ga,e*) *kal is shahr men āyā hūn*. *Yih auraten do baras kī ga,ī ga,ī*.— It will be noticed that in these examples *gayā* is not used in its literal sense.

5. If the subject of a finite *intransitive* verb and of a past participle is the same, the participle with or without *hū,ā* agrees with the subject, as: *Wih larkā apne naukar ke kandhe par baithā (hū,ā) āyā*, 'the boy was brought mounted on his servant's shoulder;' *Larkī chār-pā,ī par letī (hū,ī<sup>2</sup>) la,ī ga,ī*, 'the girl was brought stretched on a *charpa,e*'.

6. If an intransitive past participle refers to the agent with *ne*, it is inflected, and *hū,e* must be added, as: *Main ne letē hū,e tum ko yih khatt likhā = main ne letē letē yih khatt tum ko likhā*.

REMARK.—The past participles of transitive verbs are always inflected, *vide* 3.

<sup>1</sup> *Garmānā* better than *garm honā* for the sun.

<sup>2</sup> Better to insert *hū,ī*.

7. (a) If the participle is intransitive and refers to an object with the postposition *ko*, it follows the rule of adjectives and is in the masculine uninflected form, and *hū,ā* may be added or omitted, as: *Main ne us ghore ko marā (hū,ā) pāyā*, 'I found the horse dead.'

(b) If the object is without *ko* the participle will agree with its noun as in the case of ordinary adjectives, as: *Main ne ek chiriyā mari hū,i dekhī*, 'I saw a bird dead;' *Main ne ek do-annī parī (hū,i) pā,i*, 'I found a two-anna bit lying on the ground.'

REMARK.—If the participle is transitive it will be constructed absolutely, *vide* 3, as: *Main ne usko kurtī pahne (hū,e) dckhā*; *main ne ek larkī wuh kurtī pahne hū,e dekhī*.

#### 8. Examples—

- (1) Without going upstairs. *Be upor ga,e (hū,e)*.
- (2) Without going on the roof of the mosque, you won't be able to see the new moon. *Be masjid kī chhat par ga,e (hū,e), tum chānd na-dckh-sakoge.*
- (3) He is not under my control. *Wuh mere kahē (or kahne) men nahīn hai.*
- (4) You had only left a short time when my house caught fire. *Tumhen ga,e (hū,e) (or tum-hāre jāte) der na-hū,e thī ki mere makān men āg lagī.*
- (5) His deeds will one day rise up and oppose him. *Uskā kiyā<sup>1</sup> uske āgc ā,egā.*
- (6) In time of needing, when he has anything to gain by it, he will become friendly. *Waqt pare par, wuh dost ban-jā,egā.*
- (7) Why do you want to go home so early in the day? *Itne din rāhe tum kyūn ghar jānā chāhte ho?*

<sup>1</sup> Not used in plural. ~

- (8) I have been sitting here since about 9 p.m. *Pahar rāt ga,c sc main yahān baiṭhā (hū,ā) hūn.*
- (9) Unless I come myself it won't be done properly. *Be mere ā,e (hū,e) kām na-niklegā.*
- (10) I have been mistaking Zaid for Bakr (up till this moment or that moment). *Main Zaid ko Bakr samjhē hū,e<sup>1</sup> thā.<sup>2</sup>*
- (11) The girl has eaten nothing since this time yesterday. *Larkī kal is waqt kā<sup>3</sup> khā,e hū,e hai.*
- (12) Great or small, none has eaten anything since this time yesterday. *Chhoṭe bāre kal is waqt kā<sup>3</sup> khā,e hū,e hain.*
- (13) How long have you been here? *Tum ko yahān ā,e hū,e kitnī der hū,ī?*
- (14) It began to rain a short time before morning. *Kuchh rāt rāhe (se<sup>4</sup>) pānī barasnā shurū<sup>4</sup> hū,ā.*
- (15) I started on my journey a little before dawn. *Kuchh rāt rāhe (not se<sup>4</sup>) main apne safar par rawāna hū,ā.*
- (16) He was drunk. *Wuh sharāb piye hū,e thā.*
- (17) However much I reason with him he won't listen to reason. *Mere samjhā,e [se] wuh kisī tarah nahīn samajhne kā.*

<sup>1</sup> Or *samjhā hū,ā*, as *samajhnā* is both transitive and intransitive. If *hū,e* were here omitted, the verb would be identical in form with the obsolete form of the Imperfect. Formerly the Aorist was identical with the Present; then the Present was formed by adding *hai*, etc., to the Aorist, and the Imperfect by adding *thā*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> *Samjhātā thā* would refer to a particular time.

<sup>3</sup> The word *khānā* is understood.

<sup>4</sup> In the first example *se*, if inserted, indicates the point of time from which the rain started and continued, but in the second example *se* cannot be used: compare *do baje se pānī barasne lagā* and *do baje main apne safar par rawāna hū,ā*.

- (18) The doctor left without seeing the patient. *Mariż ke dekhe (ke) ba-ghair dāktar chalā-gayā.*
- (19) He left without saying good-bye (or asking permission to go). *Wuh mujh se be kahē sunे<sup>1</sup> chalā-gayā.*
- (20) Unless I come that cannot be managed. *Be mere ā,e (hū,e<sup>2</sup>) wuh kām na-ho-sakegā.*
- (21) He has become impertinent by your being so familiar with him. *Tumhāre minh lagā,e se wuh bahut shokh ho-gayā hai.*
- (22) Why have you come so late at night? *Itnī rāt ga,e (par) kyūn ā,e?*

9. By the rules given explain the following four sentences, which are all correct and have the same meaning:—

- (1) *Ham usko apne sāth lete ā,e hain.*
- (2) *Ham usko apne sāth liye (hū,e) ā,e hain.*
- (3) *Main usko apne sāth letū āyā hūn.*
- (4) *Main usko apne sāth liye hū,e āyā hūn.*

For, 'We are on the point of perishing.' *Ham halāk hū,e jāte hain (vide X, 2).*

#### XLIX. COMPOUND VERBS (WITH PARTICIPLES)

1. There is another class of not very common compound<sup>3</sup> verbs formed by prefixing an inflected past participle of a transitive verb (without *hū,e*) to *denā*, *lenā*, *dālnā*, and *jānā*.

<sup>1</sup>. *Sunā*, p.p. of *sunnā*.

<sup>2</sup> *Hū,e* can be added to the past participle of either transitive or intransitive verbs when *be* or *ba-ghair* precedes the participle.

<sup>3</sup> Most of these compounds are not used at all in Bengal, and their use is perhaps confined to Hindustan, i.e. the United Provinces.

2. With past participles of transitive verbs prefixed to *denā* or *lenā*, the usual signification is to be on the point of doing a thing, as : *Khānā lā,e detā hūn*, 'I am now just going to bring dinner,' but *Khānā lā-detā hūn*, 'I'll go and get the dinner ;' *Jo bāten wahān hū,ī hain, main tum se kahē-detā hūn*, 'I will now just tell you what happened there,' but *Main tum se kah detā hūn ki uskī dostī par bharosa na-karnā*, 'I tell you once for all not to trust his friendship.'

3. With past participles of transitive verbs prefixed to *dālnā*, the signification or the meaning is either to be on the point of doing or sometimes to be continually doing, as : *Ghorā rassī tore-dāltā hai*, 'the horse threatens every moment to break its rope.'

4. With past participles of transitive verbs prefixed to *jānā*,<sup>1</sup> the sense is properly continuous action, as : *Jab tak tum yahān baīthc-raho*<sup>1</sup> *ko,ī na-ko,ī kitāb parhīc jā,o* (= *parhīc raho*, vide 8) : but *parhīc jā,o*, 'continually read,' i.e. 'while you remain here keep yourself continually amused by reading something' ; *Is kitāb ko parhā karo* = 'read this book often, continually,' but *Is kitāb ko parhe-jā,o*, or *parhīc raho*, 'read this book continuously, without a break ;' *Is dawā ko do daf'a roz pilāyā karo*, 'give this medicine twice daily' (every day as a habit), but *Ādhe ādhe ghantc par dawā pilā,e jā,o*, 'keep on giving this medicine every half-hour' (perhaps only for one day).

REMARK.—It will thus be seen that *parhe-jānā* and *parhīc-jānā* differ slightly, but that *parhe-jānā* and *parhīc-rahnā* are the same. In *pilā,e-jānā* it is obvious that the meaning cannot be 'giving to drink without any break', so the verb means 'in quick succession'.

5. The Past Participle of *rahnā*, with or without *hū,ā* or *hū,e*, may be added to transitive or intransitive verbs ; but with transitive verbs the participle is inflected and with

<sup>1</sup> This compound is common everywhere.

intransitive not inflected (except in the plural, etc.), as: *Jab tak main laut na-āyā wuh mere ghore kī lagām pakare* (or *pakare hū,e*) *rahā*, 'he continued holding my horse's bridle till I returned ;' *Wuh mere intiżār men do ghanṭe tak baithā* (or *baithā hū,ā rahā*), 'he remained waiting for me two hours.'

6. Similarly, to *rakhnā* (the transitive of *rahnā*), when used as a servile verb, an inflected past participle, with or without *hū,e*, may be prefixed, as: *Roke-rakhnā* or *roke hū,e rakhnā*, 'to continue to keep in control' (of one already in control), but *roke-rahnā* or *roke hū,e rahnā*, 'to check,' 'keep in check' (one who may or may not already be under control), and *rok-rakhnā*, 'to stop,' 'not to allow to go.'

7. *Rakhe-rahnā* (or *rakhe hū,e rahnā*), 'to continue to keep,' is transitive, but *rakhā-rahnā* (or *rakhā-hū,ā rahnā*), 'to remain continually,' is intransitive.

REMARK.—The past participle can also be prefixed to the substantive verb to indicate continued state; if the verb is transitive the participle is inflected, if intransitive it is uninflected, as: *Wuh hāth men ek kitāb liye hū,e thi*, 'she had a book in her hand,' 'she was in a state of carrying a book ;' *Main soyā hū,ā thā*, 'I was in a state of sleeping' = the Imperfect in one of its senses only ; *Wuh 'aurat so,ā hū,ā thi*. As *samajhnā* is both transitive and intransitive, *main samajhā hū,ā thā* and *main samjhē hū,e thā*, etc., are both correct.

8. The present participle prefixed to *jānā* signifies (1) continually doing, doing on and off ; (2) or, in the Imperative, beginning to do, of a number ; (3) or, it gives the force of the Conjunctive Participle, as : (1) *Jab tak bukhār rāhe, do do ghanṭe par yih dawā pilāte jā,o*, 'as long as the fever lasts continue to give this medicine every two hours ;' (2) *Ab khānā khāte jā,o*, 'now all of you begin to eat ;' (3) *Daftār jātē hū,e magh se milte* (or *milkar*) *jā,o*, 'see me, call on me, on your way to office.'

It indicates either progressive increase or the concomitance of two acts. You cannot say, *Yih kitāb har waqt parhte-jā,o*; for *parhte-jā,o* substitute *parhtc-raho*. But it would, however, be right to say, *Kitāb parhte-jā,o jab tak—*. *Vide* also 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 12, *b*, and Lesson 14, *b*.

Before *jānā* and *rahnā* the present participle of a transitive verb is inflected, but of an intransitive uninflected, as : *Khilāte-jānā* or *khilāte-rahnā*, 'go on feeding at stated intervals,' i.e. with breaks (but usually the difference between *jānā* and *rahnā* in such verbs is that the former signifies continual action with breaks, but the latter generally continuous action without a break; in such a verb, however, as *khilāte-rahnā* it is obvious that the latter meaning is inadmissible).

*Sotā-jānā* and *sotā-rahnā*, 'to continue sleeping.'

*Chalā-jānā* is 'to go away', but *chale-jānā*, 'to go along with.' *Chale-jā,o* may be imperative of either of these two verbs. *Chār chār ghunte tak barābar chale-jānā āsān nahīn hai*, 'to keep on travelling for hours at a stretch is no easy matter,' but *Tum ko yahān se chalā-jānā chāhiye*, 'you must go away from here.'

REMARK.—As the Infinitive when used for an Imperative is polite, it is considered a plural; thus, *chale-jānā* would in this case be used for either.

9. *Vide* also XLI, 10, 11.

10. Examples—

- (1) This anxiety threatens *Is bāt kī fikr mujhe māre dāltī hai*.  
to kill me.
- (2) This house threatens to *Yih ghar mujhe kātc-khātā hai*.  
overwhelm me with gloom  
(lit. threatens to bite me).
- (3) Her dead memory *Us kī yād mujhe māre-dāltī hai*.  
threatens to kill me.

- (4) I am just about to erase *Is lafz ko chhile-detā hūn.*  
this word now in your presence.
- (5) The stabbing pain in my swollen foot is nearly *Pānw ke warm kī tīs hosh urā,e-detī hai.* driving me mad.
- (6) I'm just going to give it to him. *Main yih chīz use abhī diye-detā hūn.*
- (7) I'm just going to take it from him. *Us se liye-letā hūn.*
- (8) I'm just going to eat it. *Is ko abhī khā,e-letā hūn.*
- (9) My book remained lying on the table for two days. *Merī kitāb do din tak mez par rakhi-rahī.*
- (10) He kept his hand placed on the table. *Wuh apnā hāth mez par rakhe-rahā.*
- (11) Keep your finger, without removing it, on this spot, on the vein. *Tum apnī 'unglī is jagah rag par rakhe<sup>1</sup>-raho.*
- (12) Please begin to come inside (to a *number* of guests). *Ab āp log andar āte-jā,iye.*

11. Another class of compounds is formed by prefixing the uninflected past participle of an intransitive verb to a servile intransitive verb. In some cases *hū,ā* can be added to the participle and in some cases not, and the past participle has the signification of an English present participle, but this form of compound is not always admissible.

12. Verbs with *parnā* as a servile, and the following, do not admit of *hū,ā* being added. *Parnā*, with an uninflected participle, is intransitive and has the same signification as the transitive *dālnā* with the inflected participle, *vide* 3.

<sup>1</sup> *Rakhe* is not here inflected as a plural to agree with *tum*, as it would be in the case of an intransitive verb: *tum so,e raho*, pl., 'sleep on ;' *tū soyāt rah*, sing.

To run about, wander about running.	<i>Daurā-phirnā.</i>
To go away.	<i>Chalā-jānā.</i>
To come along.	<i>Chalā-ānā.</i>
To wander aimlessly.	<i>Mārā-phirnā.</i>
To fly round, fly about, circle in the air.	<i>Uṛā-phirnā.</i>
To threaten to fall.	<i>Girā-parnā.</i>
To threaten to jump.	<i>Kūdā-parnā.</i>
To threaten to overflow or spill (not to boil over).	<i>Ublā-parnā.</i>
The river is rising up, in a state <sup>1</sup> of flood.	<i>Daryā charhā-ātā hai.</i>
My heart is overflowing, in a state <sup>1</sup> of overflowing.	<i>Merā dil umdā-ātā hai.</i>

13. *Mārā-parnā*, 'to be ruined, undone,' is an exception; the participle is from a transitive verb, and *parnā* gives some idea of threatening. *Parā-rakhnā*, 'to keep in a lying down state,' is also an exception.

14. The uninflected past participle (*hū,ā* not admissible) sometimes gives the idea of continuance, as : *Main is bojh se dabā-jātā hūn*, 'I am being slowly crushed by this load ;' *Merā dil nā-unmedī se baithā-jātā hai*, 'my heart is sinking from despair.' Compare *jānā* in 4 and 8.

15. With another class of compounds *hū,ā* may be added, as—

To run (willingly).	<i>Daurā (hū,ā) jānā.</i>
To run (unwillingly).	<i>Daurā-jānā.</i>
To go running (merely indicates state).	<i>Daur-kar jānā.</i>
A dog is running (willingly) after a man.	<i>Ek admī ke pīchhe ek kuttā daurā-jātā hai.</i>

<sup>1</sup> In *daurā-ānā*, vide 5, *ānā* gives the idea not of state but of coming.

A man was chasing (un-	<i>Ek admī ck chhūṭe hū,c ghore</i>
willingly) a loose horse.	<i>ke pīchhe daurā-jātā thā.</i>
To come running, to run	<i>Daurā-ānā.</i>
towards one.	
To remain stuck, remain	<i>Lagā<sup>1</sup> (hū,ā) rahnā.</i>
engaged in.	
To remain turned.	<i>Phirā (hū,ā) rahnā.</i>
To remain open.	<i>Khulā (hū,ā) rahnā.</i>
To remain in a fallen state.	<i>Girā (hū,ā) rahnā.</i>
To remain sitting or seated.	<i>Baijhā (hū,ā) rahnā.</i>

16. With some compounds either the present or the past participle can be used, with others not, as—

To remain sleeping, to sleep	<i>Soyā-rahnā</i> or <i>sotā-rahnā</i> .
on.	
To flow on.	<i>Bahā-rahnā</i> (but not <i>bahā-</i> <i>rahnā</i> ).
To remain safe, to be kept in	<i>Bachā-rahnā</i> , but—
reserve, <i>but</i> —	
To avoid or shun always.	<i>Bachitā-rahnā.</i>
Avoid sinning.	<i>Gunāh se bachte-raho.</i>
A hundred rupees is always	<i>Khizāne men sau rūpiya bachā-</i>
kept in the chest in reserve.	<i>rahtā hai.</i>
To get at stated intervals.	<i>Miltā jānā</i> or <i>milā-jānā.</i>

## L. THE PRESENT POTENTIAL (PLATTS), OR THE PRESENT DUBIOUS (HOLROYD)

1. *Girtā ho*, 'may be falling.' The Present Dubious is formed by substituting the Aorist of *honā* for the substantive verb of the Present Indicative, as: *Girtā ho*, 'he *may* be falling.' This tense indicates doubt or the Subjunctive Mood, and is used only in dependent clauses. Sometimes

<sup>1</sup> *Lagā-rakhnā*, 'employ in now,' 'to keep applied to beforehand,' is for *lagā-kar-rakhnā*. *Wuh har waqt bāton men lagā-raktā hai*, 'he is always talking.'

the Aorist can be substituted for it, but the former gives the idea of continuousness.

REMARK.—The 1st person of the Aorist of *honā* (*hūn*, 'I may be') is identical in form with the 1st person of the substantive verb (*hūn*, 'I am'), consequently *girtā hūn* may be either Present or Present Dubious.

2. It is sometimes used instead of the 'Future Imperfect' of Platts, *girtā hogā*, 'will be or must be falling,' as: *Shāyad wuh is waqt khānā khātā ho* or *khātā hogā*, 'perhaps he may be eating his dinner.'

3. It can also refer to past time as well as to present and future, as: *Jis waqt tum wahān ga,e the, shāyad wuh sotā ho* (or *honā*), 'when you went there perhaps he was asleep, may have been sleeping.' The Imperfect Indicative is sometimes incorrectly substituted for it, but indicates more certainty, *vide* last example in 5.

4. For the Present Dubious after an indefinite antecedent *vide* VII, Relative Pronoun, 8.

#### 5. Examples—

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (1) Is there anyone here who knows <i>Turki</i> ?   | <i>Yahān ko,ī hai jo Turkī jāntā ho?</i> (not <i>jāne</i> ).  |
| (2) Scarcely a day passes without the post bringing two or three letters for me from friends. | <i>Ko,ī din aisā nahin hotā ki doston ke do chār khat̄ na ā-rahte<sup>1</sup> hon</i> (not <i>hain</i> ).                         |
| (3) I am not your Mir Mahdi that I should be dying of love for Miran Sahib.                   | <i>Main Mīr Mahdī nahīn ki Mīran Sāhib par martā hūn</i> (or <i>marūn</i> <sup>2</sup> ).   |
| (4) He never stirred out of the house unless forced to do so.                                 | <i>Wuh hamesha ghar men rāhtā, thā siwā,e is ke ki ko,ī khāss zārūrat us ko bāhir jāne par majbūr kartī ho</i> (or <i>kare</i> ). |

<sup>1</sup> Or *ā-jāte hon*, not continuous, which would be *ātē rāhte hon*.

<sup>2</sup> Or *marūn*, 'that I should die.'

- (5) Though these apes may not possess the gift of human speech, still they must be able to communicate their wants to each other by some means or other. *In bandaron men agarchi insān kī ḫarāk bolne kī quvvat na-hotī ho<sup>1</sup> lekin dil kī bāten ek dūsre par kisi na kisi ḫarāk zarūr zāhir karte honge.*
- (6) He may be going to Paris, but I don't think so. *Shāyad Pāris jātā ho lekin mujhe to qarīna<sup>2</sup> nahin.*
- (7) I didn't find him at home; perhaps he was playing cricket in the maidan. *Main ne us ko ghar men na-pāyā, shāyad wuh maidān men us waqt kirkit kheltā ho.*
- (8) Two hours ago there was a cool breeze; probably it was then raining, or it may have then been raining. *Do ghanṭe hū,e ḫandī hawā chaltī thi, ta'ajjub nahīn us waqt kahīn pānī barstā ho (or kahīn pānī barastā thā<sup>3</sup>).*

## LI. THE FUTURE IMPERFECT (PLATTS), OR THE PRESENT DUBIOUS, SECOND FORM (HOLROYD)

1. *Girtā hogā*, 'must be falling.' This tense has much the same force as the Present Dubious, but it can be used in the principal clause, as: *Tumhārā bhā,ī raste men ātā hogā* (not *ātā ho*), 'your brother must be on his way here,' 'your brother must be coming along the road here,' but *Ta'ajjub nahīn ki tumhārā bhā,ī raste men ātā ho* (not *ātā hogā*), 'your brother may be on his way here, may be coming along the road here;' *Wuh is waqt sotā hogā*, 'he must be now sleeping;' *Shāyad<sup>4</sup> wuh is waqt sotā ho*.

<sup>1</sup> Here *hotī ho* is better than *ho*, as it indicates a general truth, *vide H.S.S., 1, g.*

<sup>2</sup> *Qarīna*, 'likelihood, context; symmetry, order;' *qarīne se baiṭho*, 'sit up,' 'sit properly' (to a lounging schoolboy).

<sup>3</sup> The use of the Imperfect here is colloquial and not quite correct; *vide Future Imperfect, LI, 2, Remark.*

<sup>4</sup> *Shāyad = mumkin'hai ki*— and therefore corresponds to a principal clause.

2. Like the Present Dubious, with which it is in subordinate clauses interchangeable, it can be used for past, present, or future time; *vide* Present Dubious, 3. It can also sometimes take the place of the Imperfect Indicative, as: *Do ghante hūc thandī hawā chaltī thī, shāyad us waqt kahīn pānī barastā hogā* (or *ho*) or *barastā thā*.

REMARK.—After *ta'ajjub nahīn* the tense should be *barastā ho* and not *barastā hogā*, but after *shāyad* it may be (1) *barastā ho*, or (2) *barastā hogā*, or (3) *barastā thā*. After *shāyad*, Nos. (1) and (2) are identical, and No. (3) expresses more certainty. If *shāyad* be omitted, the only tense that can be used with the same meaning is No. (2).

### 3. Examples—

- (1) What sort of a man can he be that refuses to eat salt? (indef., no special man intended).      *Wuh kaisā ādmī hogā jo namak nahīn khātā ho?* (or *hogā*).

But—

- (2) What sort of a man is he (referring to a special man) who refuses to eat salt?

*Wuh kaisā ādmī hai jo namak nahīn khātā hai?*

- (3) I could not tell from his face that he was in the habit of deceiving people.

*Qiyāfe se uske yih ihtimāl na-thā ki wuh fareb detā hogā* (but *wuh mujhe fareb degā*, 'that he would deceive me').

## LII. THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS, SUBJUNCTIVE (PLATTS); OR THE PAST CONDITIONAL, FIRST FORM (HOLROYD)

*Girīā hotā*, 'had he been falling.' This tense refers to time either past or present, but not future, and is often interchangeable with the Past Conditional, but with a slight change of meaning (*vide* XLIV).—

Had he <i>drunk</i> wine he would have given you some (or were he to drink wine he would give you some).	<i>Agar wuh sharāb pītā to tum ko bhī pilātā.</i>
Had he <i>been drinking</i> wine he would have given you some (or he would have been giving you some).	<i>Agar wuh sharāb pītā hotā to tum ko bhī pilātā (or pilātā hotā).</i>
Had he <i>been selling</i> (i.e. willing to sell) the horse he would certainly have informed me.	<i>Agar wuh ghorā bechtā hotā to zarūr mujhe <u>khabar</u> detā (not detā hotā).</i>
Were he to sell the horse he would certainly tell me (or had he sold the horse he would certainly have told me).	<i>Agar wuh ghorā bechtā to zarūr mujhe <u>khabar</u> detā.</i>
I ought to have thought, before borrowing, of how I could repay the loan.	<i>Qarz lene ke pahle yih to<sup>1</sup> sonchā hotā ki kahān se adā karūngā.</i>
My object would have been fulfilled (i.e. I would have thanked God) if instead of a daughter a son had been born to you (would have been born).	<i>Merī murād to tabhī bar ātī ki jab tumhāre ghar men betī ke badle betā paidā hūā hotā.</i>

### LIII. THE PAST POTENTIAL (PLATTS), OR THE PAST DUBIOUS, FIRST FORM (HOLROYD)

1. *Wuh girā ho*, 'he may have fallen.' This tense is interchangeable with the Future Perfect of Platts, the Past Dubious, second form, of Holroyd; i.e. with *wuh girā hogā*, 'he will or shall have fallen,' when it refers to past time.

<sup>1</sup> *Main ne* understood after *to*.

It can only be used in dependent clauses, whereas the Future Perfect or Past Dubious, second form, can be used in principal clauses; compare two forms of Present Dubious, L and LI.

## 2. Examples—

Perhaps he may have gone by *Shāyad<sup>1</sup> bhūlke us raste se*  
that road. *gayā ho* (or *hogā*).

I should not wonder if<sup>2</sup> he *'Ajab kyā hai ki<sup>2</sup> tujhe fareb*  
has deceived you. *diyā ho*.

What, have you not done *Kyā tum ne is kām ko nahīn*  
this? *kiyā?*

It is unlikely that you have  
not done this. *Kyā tum ne is kām ko na-kiyā*  
*hogā?*

Amongst gentlemen the sending  
of little presents is  
the foundation of mutual  
liking, especially so when  
the parties have held con-  
verse together, embraced  
each other, and read poetry  
together.  
*Sharīfon men tulfa denā mu-*  
*habbat hai aur phir aisi*  
*hālat men jab ki āpas men*  
*guft o gū, baghl-gīrī aur*  
*shī'r-līlwāni hū,i ho.*

## LIV. THE FUTURE PERFECT (PLATTS). THE PAST DUBIOUS, SECOND FORM (HOLROYD)

1. *Wuh girā hogā*, 'he will or shall have fallen.' This tense can be used either in subordinate or in principal clauses, and refers to either past or future time. It is only when it refers to past time that it can, in dependent clauses, be substituted for the previous tense.

2. The Future Perfect in Hindustani always indicates a doubt. If there is no doubt in the case, the English Future Perfect will be rendered by the simple Future. *Agle sāl ke Disambar men merī shādī hū,e do mahīne ho-ga,e honge,*

<sup>1</sup> *Vide* n. 4 to 1, Future Imperfect, LI.

<sup>2</sup> *Ki* and not *agar*, as there is no condition.

' by December next year I shall have been married two months,' might be said by a man not married, but who was about to be married; if, however, he were already married he would say, *Agle sāl ke Disambar men merī shādī hū,e do baras ho-jā,enge.* Vide also XXXVII, 7, 8.

### 3. Examples—

I must have lost it.

*Ham se gum ho-gayā hogā*<sup>1</sup>  
(or *ham se kho-gayā hogā*).

My foot must have slipped.

*Merā panw phisal-gayā hogā.*

The boat must have reached  
by now.

*Ab tak jahāz wahān pahunch  
gayā hogā.*

By the breaking of such and  
such a bank many people  
must have suffered great loss.

*Fulāne 'bank' ghar ke diwāla  
nikalne se bahut logon kā<sup>2</sup>  
nuqsān hū,ā hogā.*<sup>3</sup>

When you went there (lit.  
when you must have gone  
there) he must have risen  
to his feet on seeing you.

*Jab (or agar) tum wahān ga,e  
hoge<sup>4</sup> wuh tumhen dekh-kar  
kharā hū,ā hogā.*

I shall be dead by the time  
you arrive.

*Jab tak tum ā,oge main us  
waqt tak mar-gayā hūngā.*

By December next year I shall  
have been<sup>5</sup> in this house ten  
years.

*Agle sāl ke Disambar men  
mujhe is ghar men rahte  
hū,e pūre das sāl ho  
jā,enge<sup>5</sup> (not *ho-ga,e honge*).*

I strongly suspect that he also  
was mixed up with you in  
this dacoity.

*Mujhe gumān-i ghālib hai ki  
wuh bhī is dāke men terā  
shāmil-i hāl hū,ā hogā (or  
thā).*

<sup>1</sup> *Gum-jānā* is Calcutta Hindustani.

<sup>2</sup> *Kā* more idiomatic than *ko*.

<sup>3</sup> Here *hū,ā hogā* and not *hogā*, as the speaker is stating a presumption.

<sup>4</sup> Here the Future Perfect indicates doubt about the going; if there were no doubt the Pluperfect would be used, as: *Jab (or agar) tum wahān ga,e the wuh*—.

<sup>5</sup> Simple Future in Hindustani and not Future Perfect, as the owner is already living in the house and the statement is a certainty: vide 2.

He could not have gone five *Pānch chha qadam na-gayā*  
or six paces when—. *hogā ki*.

Perhaps I (may) have for- *Shāyad main bhūlā hūngā* (or  
gotten (or—have forgotten). —*bhūlā hūn*).

## LV. THE PAST PERFECT, SUBJUNCTIVE (PLATTS). THE PAST CONDITIONAL, SECOND FORM (HOLROYD)

*Agar wuh girā hotā*, 'had he fallen.' This tense only refers to past time. With transitive verbs it requires *ne*. It is always interchangeable with the Past Conditional (*girtā*) when the latter refers to past time. *Vide* also Conditional Sentences, LVI.

Had he come in time I should *Agar wuh waqt par āyā hotā*  
not have been annoyed. (or *ātā*) to *main nā-rāz na-*  
*hūnā hotā* (or *na-hotā*). "

## LVI. OPTATIVE, CONDITIONAL, CONCESSIONAL, AND ASYNDETIC SENTENCES

1. The tense *girtā* or *kartā* (called by Forbes and Holroyd the 'Indefinite' and by Platts and by Kempson the 'Past Conditional or Optative') may refer to time past, present, or future, but is rarely used for anything but past time; it is *only used for a future when it is assumed the event will not take place*.

2. Optative clauses are introduced by *kāsh* or *kāshke*, 'would that,' or by some such phrase as 'God grant that' or 'how nice if —,' as: *Kāsh wuh maujūd ho*, 'I wish he were present,' or *kāsh wuh maujūd hotā*, 'I wish he had been present, or were present now.'

3. The *prostasis*, or if-clause, of conditional sentences is introduced by 'if' (*jo* or *agar*) or 'when' (*jab*), and the consequent proposition or main clause, the *apodosis*, is usually preceded by the correlative *to*.

4. Conditional sentences may conveniently be classed under three heads—(1) possible conditions, i.e. those that may be realized, or those that may have been realized; also those in which the *prostasis* only is hypothetical ; (2) impossible, or those that were not realized ; (3) conditions in which the *apodosis* or if-clause is understood ; these belong partly to (1) and partly to (2).

REMARK.—The 'if' is sometimes idiomatically understood, *vide* 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 29, e. Often the correlative *to* may also be omitted.

5. (a) First, No. (1) or possible conditions. In the *prostasis* usually the Aorist or Present Subjunctive, or the Future is used, or sometimes the Present, etc., Indicative, as : *Agar tujhe apni jān 'azīz hai to meri bāt sun*, 'if you value your life (as of course you do), then listen to me ;' *Agar tujhe apni jān 'azīz ho to wahān na-jā*, 'if you value your life (as you don't), or were you to value your life, then don't go there ;' *Agar sunā chāhe to mān apni sar-guzasht bayān karūn*, 'if you wish, I will now, let me now, relate to you my adventures : ' for *karūn* substitute *karūngā*, and the meaning is 'I will at some future time relate' ; country people, however, use *karūngā* in both cases. After *ummedwār hūn ki*—, 'I hope that you will—,' it is usual to use the Future, as it is more polite than the Aorist; *vide* example below.

(b) Sometimes the condition is assumed to have been realized, and in this case the Past or Preterite Tense is used, as : *Agar (or jo) tum ne merā kahnā na-mānā to main tumhen sazā dūngā*, 'if you don't listen to what I say I'll punish you.'

REMARK.—After  the Preterite can be similarly used in a future sense, but not after *jab* : *Wuh jis waqt (not jab) āyā main usī waqt chalā-jā,ūngā*, 'I will go as soon as he arrives.'

(c) In *Agar bhūl se quşūr hū,ā ho ummedwār hūn use mu'āf farmā,o* (or, better, *farmā,oge*) the meaning is 'if I have by any chance committed a fault I hope you will pardon me'.

6. There are thus four ways of expressing a *possible* condition with shades of difference in meaning: 'It will be a terrible thing if there is a famine next year'—

- (1) *Agar qah̄t sālī ho to bara ghazab hogā.*
- (2) „ „ *hogī* „ „ *hogā.*
- (3) „ „ *hū,ī* „ „ *hogā.*
- (4) „ „ *hū,ī* „ „ *hū,ā.*

In (1) the doubtful *ho* indicates that the famine is not expected. In (2) the future *hogī* is simply conditional and leaves the matter open. In (3) and (4) it is assumed that a famine *will* take place. In practice, however, these distinctions are often neglected.

#### 7. Examples of 'possible' conditions, etc.—

- (1) If you were to ask me I *Sach pūchhiye to kah-dūn ki*  
would tell you *plainly* that '*wuh almaq hai.*'<sup>1</sup>  
he was a fool.
- (2) If you want to be re- *Apmī 'izzat agar manzūr hai*<sup>2</sup>  
spected don't serve him. *to us kī naukari na-karo*  
*(vide 8).*
- (3) When<sup>3</sup> the horse arrives *Jab*<sup>3</sup> *ghorā ā-jā,e to mujhe*  
you must tell me. *khabar deni chāhiye.*
- (4) If you turn soldier what *Agar sipāhī hoge* (or *banoge*)  
good will that do you? *to kyā (hogā)?*
- (5) If my successor arrive *Merī badlī kā admī* (or *'iwažī*)  
even as late as to-morrow *agar kal tak bhī ā-jātā*<sup>4</sup> (or  
I could still start and reach *ā-jā,e*<sup>4</sup>) *main chal-saktā aur*  
in time. *waqt par pahunchtā* (or  
*pahunch-saktā).*

<sup>1</sup> Direct narration after 'say'.

<sup>2</sup> *Hai* and not *ho*, as it is taken for granted that a man's 'izzat is dear to him.

<sup>3</sup> 'When,' *jab*, is often regarded as a conditional particle.

<sup>4</sup> *Ā-jātā* implies that he cannot arrive, and *ā-jā,e* that there is hope of his coming.

- (6) If sanction for my leave arrive as late even as the end of next month, I can, or could, still start in the 'Calentta'. *Jo agle mahīne ke ākhir' tak bki ruhsat kī mangūrī pa-hunchti to main 'Kalkutta' nām kishkti par rawāna ho-saktā.*
- (7) Were the village head-man here (as he is not) he would certainly procure coolies (or had the lambardar been here he would certainly have procured coolies). *Agar lambar-dār yahān hotā to zorur qulī paidā karta.*
- (8) I wish it may be so! *Kāsh yih bāt ho!*
- (9) God grant my brother will soon come to see me! *Khudā kare merā bhā, i jald mujh se mil-jā,e!*
- (10) God grant I may soon find my (lost) brother! *Khudā kare merā bhā, i jald mujhe mil-jā,e!*
- (11) I wish thou wouldest inquire what is the matter with me (said by a sighing lover). *Kāsh pūchho ki terā hōl kpn̄ hai.*
- (12) I wish he would come (or I wish he had come). *Kāsh ātā.*
- (13) I wish he had come. *Kāsh āyā hotā.*

8. Conditional sentences in which the *prostasis* only is hypothetical present little difficulty. An Imperative may occur in the *apodosis*. The following examples should be studied:—

- (1) If he is sleeping (as he probably is) don't wake him up. *Agar wuh sotā hai to (usko) na-jagā,o.*
- (2) Should he happen to be sleeping (I don't know whether he is or not) don't wake him up. *Agar wuh sotā ho to usko na-jagā,o.*

- (3) If he wishes to come (as he probably does) let him come.  
*Agar wuh ānā chāhtā hai to āne dō.*
- (4) If he was desirous of going, why didn't you stop him?  
*Agar wuh jānā chāhtā thā to tum ne us ko kyūn na-rokā?*
- (5) If I find him reading (when I get there; future time) I won't speak with him.  
*Agar wuh parhtā hogā<sup>1</sup> to main us se kuchh nabokāngā.*
- (6) If he has committed this fault (as I think he has) I will punish him.  
*Agar us ne yih quşūr kiyā hai to use sazā dūngā.*
- (7) If he has done this fault (an open question) I will punish him.  
*Agar us ne yih quşūr kiyā hogā to use sazā dūngā.*
- (8) If he had<sup>2</sup> committed this fault why did you not punish him?  
*Agar us ne yih quşūr kiyā thā<sup>2</sup> to tum ne use sazā kyūn na-dī?*
- (9) If he did call you a fool what harm did he do?  
*Agar us ne tujhe be-wuqūf kahā to kyā burā kiyā?*
- (10) If you order me I'll go (= I am merely waiting for the order to start).  
*Agar hukm ho main jā,ūn (or jā,ūngā<sup>3</sup>).*
- (11) If it is your order, well, I'll go.  
*Agar hukm hai main jā,ūngā (not jā,ūn).*
- (12) If I get the order (but I don't know whether I shall get it or not) I'll go.  
*Agar hukm hogā to main jā,ūngā.*

<sup>1</sup> *Hogā*, simple condition, leaves the matter open; *ho* could not be used, as the apodosis is future (and not Imperative); *parhtā* *ho* signifies 'should be reading now'.

<sup>2</sup> Here the Indefinite *kartā* could not be used, as the apodosis is not hypothetical.

<sup>3</sup> *Jā,ūngā* indicates less readiness than *jā,ūn*.

- (13) It would be better for *Agar ā,o to achchhā hai*<sup>1</sup> (or *hogā*).  
 (14) Warm a little water for *me (= if you warm some water for me), I'll bathe.* *Thorā pānī garm karo to main nahāñn.*
- (15) Promise and then I'll go (*= if you promise, I'll then go).* *Wa'da karo jabhī main jā,ānqā.*
- (16) If (or when) I find any mistake in the translation I correct it. *Agar (or jab) tarjame men main ko,ī ghalañī pātū hūn tous ko durust kar-detā hūn.*

9. As stated in 1, the 'Indefinite' Tense may refer to any time: *Agar āj ghorā wahān pahunchtā to kyā khūb hotā* may mean either 'if the horse has already arrived there to-day'<sup>2</sup> or 'if it arrives to-day later on'; but *Agar āj ghorā pahunche to kyā khūb ho*, or *hogā*, 'if the horse arrives to-day later on'; *Agar main tumhari jayak hotā*—, 'if I were you or had I been you (as I am or was not).'

10. Precative or optative clauses can sometimes be expressed as conditional clauses and vice versa, as: *Kyā khūb ho ki* (or *agar*) *barsāt shurū' ho*, or *kyā khūb hotā ki* (or *agar*) *barsāt shurū' hotī*, 'how nice if the rains have commenced now'; but *Kāsh barsāt shurū' ho*, or *hotī*, 'would that, if only, the rains would commence' (as they have not commenced, and it is not the time for them to commence).

11. In the second class, i.e. the impossible or unrealized conditions, the Indefinite Tense (*girtā*) or its two allied forms (*girā hotā* or *girtā hotā*, 'might have been falling') may be substituted; but while the first and third forms may refer to past or future time (*vide* XLIV and LII, 1), the second can refer only to past (*vide* LV).

<sup>1</sup> The Present Tense, to indicate certainty; it is often so used for the Future.

<sup>2</sup> And it is not expected to arrive, *vide* 1; in colloquial, however, this distinction is often neglected.

EXAMPLE.—‘It would have been well had he known this,’ *agar wuh is bāt ko jāntā* (or *jāntā hotā*, ‘had he been knowing’) to *achchhā hotā*, or *agar us ne yih bāt jānī hotī to—*.

REMARK.—*Girtā* and *girtā hotā* are not always interchangeable: *Agar wuh ghore ko bechtā—*, ‘had he sold the horse—,’ but *bechtā hotā*, ‘had he been selling the horse.’

In the above example *thā* can be idiomatically substituted for *hotā*, but this peculiarity of tense is confined to the substantive verb.

12. For the past optative either of the first two may be used, as: *Kāsh main wahān marī* or *marā hotā*, ‘would I had died there;’ but *marī hotā* could not be used as it would signify ‘had been in a dying state’.

13. The three forms of the Indefinite may also be used in the Optative, which, *vide* 10, may sometimes be converted into a condition: *Kāsh wuh is bāt ko jāntā* or *jāntā hotā*,<sup>1</sup> or *kāsh us ne is bāt ko jānā hotā*.

14. Sometimes in the apodosis of a past condition the Pluperfect is used to give force, as: *Agar main ne dawā na-pī-hotī to main mar-gayā thā* (= *mar gayā hotā = mar-jātā*).

15. In the case of the substantive verb only, *thā* can be substituted for *hotā* in the prostasis of a condition; *vide* Examples (1) and (2) in 16.

16. Examples of ‘impossible’, i.e. unrealized, conditions—

(1) Had he come last week *Agar wuh ga,e hastē ātā tī*  
it would have been well;      *khūb hotā* (or *thā*).      ;  
or

(2) Were he to come here *Agar wuh āj yahān ātā to*  
to-day it would be well.      *khūb hotā* (or *thā*), or —*a,e*  
—*ho*.

<sup>1</sup> *Jāntā hotā*, ‘had been knowing.’

- (3) Had we lived within our means we would not have fallen on these evil days. *Agar ham apni hisāt ke māwāfq chalte* (or *apne maqdār ke māwāfq pharech karte*) *to yih burā din dekhna nahi pūrī.*
- (4) If I had had the power I would not have allowed him to do so. *Merā bas ekhtā to us ko aisa karni na-detā.*
- (5) I could have sunk into the earth from shame (lit. if the earth had opened I would gladly have been contained in it). *Agar zamin phat-gai hoti to main us nān samā-jātā.*
- (6) He kept on saying,<sup>1</sup> 'Would God I had died for thee.' *Wuh yih kahtā-gayā* (or *-rahā), 'Kāsh main tujh par fidā ho-jātā.'*
- (7) Had you, Sahib, not come to my assistance I was a dead man. *Agar āp merī madad ko na-āte to us ne mujhe mār-dālā thā (= mār dāltā).*

17. Class 3, in which the prosthesis or if-clause is suppressed, is puzzling even to natives. Special attention must be paid to the sequence of tenses.

- (1) I am so hungry that I would prefer<sup>2</sup> a single grain of corn to this pearl (said by a starving man that lights upon a pearl in the wilderness). *Main aisa bhūkā hūn ki jau ke ek dāne ko<sup>3</sup> is motī par tarjīh detā hūn.<sup>4</sup>*

<sup>1</sup> *Ratnā* or *rat-lagānā* is an idiom for 'to keep on saying the same thing'; *Uṣ kī rat sc merā dimāgh phir-gayā*, 'I'm quite giddy from his ceaseless repetition.'

<sup>2</sup> Some such phrase as 'if I had the choice' is understood.

<sup>3</sup> Note the *ko*; always *kisi chīz ko—par tarjīh denā*.

<sup>4</sup> Here the Present Tense *hūn* is necessary after 'I am so hungry that—'.

- (2) A youth met us with a voice so sweet that he *might have called down*<sup>1</sup> the birds from the sky. *Ek jawān āyā jis kī āvāz aisi surīlī thī ki parindon ko havā se ulārtā* (or *ulārsaktā thā*).
- (3) Hell itself would be shocked at something I did. *Main ne to wuh kām kiyā ki dorukh bhī mujh se panāh māngtā* (or *main ne—kiyā hai ki — mānge, or māngegā*).
- (4) I would not give even one rupee for it. *Main to is ke liye ek rūpiya bhī na-detā* (or *na-dūn, or na-dūngā*).
- (5) The faqir had nothing to offer (lit. that he should have offered it, or that he should offer it). *Faqīr ke pās kuchh na-thū jo peshkash kartā* (or *kare*).
- (6) I would risk my life to serve you. *Main āp kī khidmat-quzāri men jān larā-dūngā.*

18. (a) Concessional clauses are allied to conditional. They are introduced by *agarchi*, *harchand*, and *go* or *go-ki*, 'although'; and *mānā<sup>2</sup> ki*, 'admitted that,' 'granted'; or *bā-wujūde-ki*, 'notwithstanding,' 'albeit.' The correlatives are *lekin*, *magar*, 'but'; and *tau bhī*, *tā ham<sup>3</sup>*, and *phir bhī*, 'yet,' 'still,' 'nevertheless.'

(b) *Hāl-ān-ki* (or *yā ab*, vide 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 26, d), 'whereas' and 'though',<sup>4</sup> introduces a concessional<sup>4</sup> clause generally when it follows the principal clause.

(c) For 'even though' vide 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 25, c.

<sup>1</sup> 'Had he tried,' or 'had he sung', understood.

<sup>2</sup> From *mānnā*, *main ne* understood.

<sup>3</sup> *Tā ham* is Hindustani only, and is not understood by Persians; it is apparently a Persian translation of *tan bhī*.

<sup>4</sup> *Hāl-ān-ki* is an adversative as well as a concessional conjunction.

## 19. Examples of concessional clauses—

- (1) Although I reasoned with him, nay, even abused him, (still) he remained obstinate. *Har chand main ne us ko bahut samjhāyā balki burā bhalā bhī kahā, (tau bhī) woh apnī zidd se bāz na-āyā.*
- (2) Although you have disguised yourself as a faqir, still I recognize you. *Go ki (or bā-wujūdc-ki) tum ne apne āp ko faqīron ke bhes (or libās) men rakhā hai (tā ham, etc.) main ne tum ko pahchān-liyā.*
- (3) Admitting that the world is flat, still—. *Mān-liyā ki dunyā chiptī hai tā ham—.*
- (4) You indulge in wine to excess though it is forbidden by Muslim law. *Tum sharāb par marte ho hāl-ān-ki Islām men harām hai.*
- (5) The mother is devoted to her eldest boy. *Mān ape bare bēte par fidā hai.*

20. A form of compound sentence that requires notice is the asyndetic. Urdu, being a dramatic language, naturally employs asyndeton.<sup>1</sup> The omission of the 'joints and hinges of language' gives to a sentence force and hurrying rapidity. Examples—

- (1) Say 'sir' to others and 'sir' will be said to you (be respectful and you'll be treated with respect). *Jī kaho jī kahlā,o* (proverb).
- (2) Let alone seeing him, I have never even heard his name. *Main ne to us kā nām bhī na-sunā, dekhnā dar kinār* (or *dekhnā to ma'lūm*) ; or *dekhnā to dekhnā, main ne us kā nām bhī nahīn sunā.*

<sup>1</sup> Asyndeton is a figure of speech (a figure of syntax) by which connectives are omitted. Macaulay's style is habitually asyndetic.

- (3) What comparison can *Kahān main, kahān tum ?*  
there be between us two ?
- (4) I've no money ; how can *Rūpiya nahīn ; guzārā kis-*  
I get along ? *tarah ho ?*
- (5) Take either. *Chāho<sup>1</sup> yih lo chāho wuh.*

REMARK.—In the following there is merely an ellipsis of 'and': *Wuh āte jāte hain*, 'they come and go'; *Main ne khūb khāyā piyā*, 'I eat and drink my fill'; *Wuh āyā jāyā kī*, 'she was in the habit of coming to and fro.'

## LVII. COLLOCATION

1. *Inversion and emphasis.* In Hindustani the most emphatic place in a sentence is near the end. *Main ne Zaid ko mārā* has no emphasis, but *Zaid ko main ne mārā* has and equals 'I killed Zaid; as for Zaid I killed him'. English people speaking Hindustani generally place the emphatic word in the wrong place.

2. The order of the words in the following should be carefully studied :—

- (1) We two will soon be *Ham donon, qarib hai, ki*  
captured. *pakre jāen.*  
Here the stress falls on *qarib hai*.
- (2) As for my father, he died *Mere wālid ne, muddat hūñ,*  
long ago. *ki qazā kī.*
- (3) As for the Queen, she *Malike ne pachās baras se*  
ascended the throne more *ziyāda guzre honge ki julūs*  
than fifty years ago. *farmāyā.*
- (4) It is impossible that he *Is rāh se, mumkin nahīn ki*  
should have escaped by *wuh niklā hogā.* <sup>\*6.</sup>
- (5) How can I tell how *Kyā kahūn jo maza mujh ko*  
much I enjoyed it ? *milā ?*

<sup>1</sup>. *Chāho* can only be used for 'either—or—' with the 2nd pers. pl.; *chāhe—chāhe* and *kyā—kyā*, etc., can be used unrestrictedly.

The pleasure I enjoyed, *Jo maza mujh ko milā kyā*  
how can I describe it? *bayān kariūn?*

(6) Where is his father? *Bāp uskā kahān hai?*

Emphasis on *bāp*.

(7) The child, the Raja's, *Larkā, Rājā kā, mar-gayā.*  
has died.

(8) Such a rarity, even if  
my brothers traversed the  
whole world, could never  
be obtained by them. *Aisī chīz-i nādir hargiz mere  
bhā, iyon ko, go tamām 'ālam  
(men) phiren, muyassar na-  
hogī.*

Here the stress is on the concessional clause.

(9) His treatment, as regards me, is good. *Uskū, mere sāth, sulūk achchhā  
hai.*

Stress on *mere sāth*.

(10) Well has he treated me? *Kyā us ne achchhā mere sāth  
sulūk kiya?*

Stress on *achchhā*.

How well he has treated me! (lit. or ironical). *Kyā achchhā us ne mere sāth  
sulūk kiya.*

No stress.

(11) That man is brave who keeps himself under control. *Wuh ādmī jawān mard hai jo  
apne dil ko qābū men rakhe.*

Brave is he who controls himself.

*Jawān mard wuh hai jo—.*

(12) There is a treasure buried underneath the tree beneath which you are standing. *Jis darakht ke nīche tū kharā  
hai wahān ek dafīna hai.*

Ditto.

*Wuh darakht jis ke nīche tū  
kharā hai wahān ek dafīna  
hai.*

No difference in signification in the last two, but *wahān* in both is incorrect; omit *wahān* in the first. The second should be reconstructed, since if the incorrect *wahān* were omitted the sentence would then run *apne nīche ek dafīna*

*rakhtā hai*; but as *darakht* is not a living being, this is unidiomatic.<sup>1</sup>

(13) Of *his* being absent in travel, he had written to me; so where could I have sent a reply to his letter?

*Apnā* emphatic, agrees with *maṣrūf honā*.

(14) Poor folk amongst whom there is no *parda*, their daughters - in - law and daughters<sup>2</sup> work in the fields like men.

(15) As for mere writing, I can write but not as beautifully as you.

(16) Vide example in XXXVI, 15 (13).

3. For the position of *ne*, *vide* agent case, III, 3 (e).
4. For remarks on *ko*, *vide* cases of nouns, III, 5 (j), (k), (l).
5. For relative construction, *rule* VII, 1, 2.
6. For position of *nī* and *bhī*, *vide* VIII, 14 (a), (e), (f).
7. For the position of *hī*, *vide* VIII, 15 (d), (e), (f).
8. For the position of the negatives, *vide* VIII, 17 (a), (b), (d), (g), (h), (i).
9. For position of interrogatives, *vide* next section.

### LVIII. INTERROGATIVES (DIRECT NARRATION)

1. It will be noticed that all the Hindi interrogatives begin with *k*. *Ko*, *i* and *kuchh*, however, are also Hindi, but are not interrogatives.

2. It is a general rule that the interrogative should not commence a sentence: thus, *Tum kaun ho?* not *Kaun tum*

<sup>1</sup> In old Urdu, however, such sentences do occur.

<sup>2</sup> These being the younger female members of the family, the *parda* rule should especially apply to them.

*ho?* If, however, the personal pronoun be omitted, the interrogative necessarily stands first, as *Kaun ho?*

3. *Kahān*, however, where it is idiomatically used to express dissimilarity, generally comes first to indicate an unusual use, as : *Kahān Rājā Bhojh, kahān Gangā telī?* (proverb), 'what comparison is there between Raja Bhojh and Gangā the oilman?' *Kahān main, kahān tum* = 'there is no comparison between you and me'; but *Phir main kahān tum kahān*, 'God knows where we may be,' i.e. 'we may never meet again' (to a dying man or to a traveller just starting).

4. The particles *kyā* and *āyā* that introduce an interrogative sentence, stand first in the sentence.

5. For an interrogative with a demonstrative pronoun, as a substitute for a relative, *vide VI, 2 (b)*.

#### LIX. 'WHETHER OR NOT', AND INDIRECT QUESTIONS

The *yā nahīn* or *ki nahīn*, '—or not,' cannot always be omitted at the end of indirect questions. After *pūchhnā*, *kahnā*, and *batānā*, however, these words may be omitted; but after other verbs they must be inserted, as : *Pūchho ki wuh āj shām ko ā,egā (yā nahīn)*, 'ask him if (or whether) he will come this evening (or not).' In *Mere dil men pas o pesh thā ki wahān jā,un yā nahīn*, 'I was doubtful whether to go there or not,' the *yā nahīn* could not be omitted.

#### LX. APPPOSITION

1. (a) Apposition is often a useful means of condensation. Ghālib, in his letters, uses apposition largely. Example : *Būrhā, apāhaj, pūrā bahrā, ādhā andhā, zindagi se nālān, maut kā khūjāhān, din rāt parā rahtā hūn*, 'I, old, crippled. wholly deaf, half blind, complaining of life, longing for death. day and night lie on my helpless bed.'

(b). The following, however, from Ghālib is incorrect, as

a nominative (*main*) has to be understood at the beginning of the sentence and a dative (*mujh-ko*) after *bahrā*: *Pā, on se apāhuj, kānon se bahrā, zu'f-i basārat*,<sup>1</sup> *zu'f-i dimāgh, zu'f-i dil*,<sup>2</sup> *zu'f-i mi'da, in sab zu'son par zu'f-i lāli*—kyūnkar qasd-i safar karūn? 'I, maimed in my feet, deaf in my ears, weak of sight, weak of brain, weak of heart, weak of stomach (and, added to all these weaknesses, weak of Fate)—how can I think of undertaking a journey?'

(c) If the sentence is so long that it is difficult to keep the thread of meaning unbroken, the subject or object, or some emphatic word, or a summary, may be repeated.

*Us waqt mushk, māmiyā, ī, hīrbahūtī, bliṛ, chāmgādar, ghulūd, in sab chīzon ko auzān-i mazkūra-i bālā ke ba-mūjib dākhil karo, 'then the musk, mummy, red-velvet insects, wasps, the bat, the saliva glands — add all these things according to their various weights given above.'*

*Is ke bā'd phir ittifāq aur istiglāl kā sāth denā, ek koshish karne-wāle kī koshish se khāndān kā phir taraqqī karnā, 'iskūl' kā jārī honā, 'ilm kā sāth denā, is sab kuchh kā ek ittifāq kī ba-daulat honā, kyā ittifāq kī ta'līm nahīn detā? 'this family's again becoming united and vigorous, it's rising again by the exertions of a single individual, it's starting a school, it's encouraging learning, all these things taking their rise out of one thing, viz. union: do they not teach one the lesson of union?'*

2. Nouns of quantity and fractions are in apposition, as: *Do ser dūdh*, 'two quarts of milk;' (*ek*) *tihā, ī ser dūdh*, 'a third of a quart of milk.' Fractions can all be expressed by the genitive as *ser kā tīsrā hiṣṣa dūdh*.

3. (a) A plural noun in apposition to proper names. If the plural noun precedes the proper names, it is preferably not inflected, as: *Mere naukar* (or *naukarōn*) *Zaid, Amr aur*

<sup>1</sup> This should be *za'ifūl-baṣr*, etc., adjectives instead of nouns; which require the dative *mujhe*.

<sup>2</sup> i.e. getting upset at the least thing.

*Bakr ne merī ta'zīm kī,* 'my servants Zaid, 'Amr, and Bakr made reverence to me ;' *Mere naukar* (or *naukaron*) *Bahādur aur Dilāwar ko hukm do ki wuh hāzir hon,* 'order my servants Bahādur and Dilāwar to come here.'

(b) If the noun follows the proper names, the words *nām*, 'name.' or *nāmī*, 'named,' must be introduced<sup>1</sup> and the noun must be inflected, as : *Gobind, Sundar, aur Ratan nām* (or *nāmī*) *qaidiyon ko rihā karo,* 'release the prisoners named Gobind, Sundar, and Ratan.'

4. *Us ne mujhe betā karke pālā hai,* 'he has brought me up as his son.'

Vide also III, 3 (e), (f), and 5 (j), (k), (l).

## LXI. REPETITION

1. To the numerous and varying examples of the force of repeating a word, given in 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 24, the following may be added : *Agar wuh is khātt kā jawāb dc to dc, warna khālī hāth wāpas ā,o,* 'if he gives a reply to this letter, well and good, otherwise come back empty-handed ;' *Yih bimārī aisī sakht hai ki Khudā hī usko achchhā kare to kare,* 'such a terrible disease is this that no one but God can make him well ;' *Main ne usko bulā-bhejā hai ; ab wuh ā,e ā,e, na-ā,e na-ā,e,* 'I have sent some one to call him, but I am not certain if he will come ;' or, 'if he comes he comes, if he doesn't he doesn't,' i.e. 'I don't care'.

2. The Conjunctive Participle repeated signifies continual, and the Present Participle continuous action ; vide XLVI, 6, and XLVII, 8 (a), (b).

## LXII. ELLIPSIS, OMISSION, AND INSERTION

1. If two or more verbs, or participles with verbs, have the same object, the object should be stated but once ; it should

<sup>1</sup> If there were only one name mentioned, the word *nām* or *nāmī* might be omitted ; in colloquial language preferably so.

not be repeated in the form of a pronoun as in English : *Polis-wālē Zaid ko giristār karke lāc*, 'the police captured Zaid and brought (him) to the magistrate;' *Main ne ek rūpīya jeb se nikālkar Zaid ko de-diyā*, 'I took a rupee out of my pocket and gave (it) to Zaid.' Similarly, *Chor samajh-kar main Zaid ke pīchhe daurā* is better than *Zaid ko chor samajh-kar main uske pīchhe daurā*, 'mistaking Zaid for a thief I ran after (him);' 'I mistook Zaid for a thief and gave chase.'

*Vide* also 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 19, c.

2. (a) To a great extent this rule holds good with the subject also, as: *Jab Hasan gir-parā [wuh] rone lagā*, 'when Hasan fell he began to cry,' 'Hasan fell and began to cry:' here *wuh* must be omitted, otherwise it would refer to a second person. If, however, both subjects are the same pronoun, the pronoun may be repeated, but is preferably not so, as: *Jab wuh gir-parā (wuh) rone lagā*.

(b) If, however, one verb requires the agent case with *ne*, and the other does not, it is better to repeat the subject in the form of a pronoun, as: *Chor ghar men āyā aur usne mere rūpai churā-liye*, 'the thief entered my house and stole my money ;' here, as the first verb requires a subject in the nominative and the second one in the agent case, it is better to insert *us ne*, though *us ne* might be omitted.

(c) If, however, the subjects of both verbs be pronouns it is better to omit the second, as: *Wuh yahān āyā aur (usne) mujke gālī dī*.

3. (a) When two or more verbs are in the Imperfect, Perfect, or Pluperfect, the substantive verb need be mentioned only once, as: *Main pahle kitāb parhtā (thā) tab khānā khātā thā*, or *Main pahle kitāb parhtā thā tab khānā khātā (thā)*; in such sentences the *thā* may be repeated, but it is better to omit it.

NOTE.—In affirmative and negative (but not interrogative) sentences the *thā* of the Imperfect can be omitted altogether, *vide* Imperfect Tense.

(b) *Vide* XXXV, 5, for the omission of the auxiliary in co-ordinate sentences.

(c) If the feminine plural *thīn* or *hain* of the Imperfect or Present Tenses be omitted, a plural feminine *n* must be added to the verb, as: *Wuh ātīn nahīn*, 'they (women) won't come ;' here there is nothing to distinguish *ātīn* from the Past Conditional. Panjabis, however, omit the *n* from the Imperfect and Present, but add it to the Past Conditional.

Note the following : *Wuh larkiyān likhtī aur parhī thīn* ; *Wuh larkiyān ātī thīn aur apnī maze maze kī bāton se merā dil bahlātīn*. *Vide* also XXXV, 5, and H.S.S., 9, d.

4. When one verb has two or more subjects, the subject is better repeated in the form of a numeral, or of *sab*, 'all.' In *Main aur merā betā donon wahān pahunchē* idiom and euphony require the insertion of *donon*, otherwise *merā betā*, an obvious singular in *alif*, would precede a plural verb. In *Zaid 'Amr aur Bakr (tīnon or sab) āye* it is better to insert the *tīnon* or *sab*. But in *Zaid 'Amr aur Bakr āye magar Khālid na-āyā* neither *tīnon* nor *sab* could be inserted, though *yih tīnon* could : the reason is obvious.

5. For the insertion and omission of *ne*, *se*, and *ko*, *vide* III, 3 and 5.

6. For the insertion and omission of pronouns, *vide* Pronouns.

### LXIII. NARRATION

یہ خط لیکر اپنی دادی صاحب پاس جاؤ اور یہ خط پڑھ کر سناؤ اور اون سے یہ کہ دو کہ وہ بات جو میں نے تم سے<sup>1</sup> کہی تھی وہ غلط ہے اوسکی کچھہ اصل نہمن ہے

*Tum se* : this may refer to either the son, i.e. the addressee, or to the grandmother; if direct narration, to the latter, but

<sup>1</sup> *Main ne*, i.e. the writer *Ghālib*, who is writing to his son.

in this case *āp se* would be expected. If it refers to the son, it would have been better to write *wuh bāt jo wālid ne mujh sc kahī thī*.

2. (a) Stories are often prefaced by the expression *kahne-wālē kahē hain ki—*, or *kahne-wālon ne yūn kahā hai ki—*, or simply by *kahte hain ki—*.

(b) Professional story-tellers and old-fashioned people generally commence a night story by : *Sotā sansār jāgtā pāk Purwardigār, kahānī aisī jhūtī, bāt aisī anūthī, kahne-wālā jhūtī, sunne-wālā sachchā ; kānon sunī kahtā hūn, ānkhon jekhī nahīn kahtā hūn, 'the world is asleep, the Lord is awake : my story is false, but good ; the story-teller is a liar, but the listener if he repeat the story will not be a liar ; I narrate what I heard, not what I saw.'*

#### LXIV. 'HOWEVER,' 'WHATEVER,' AND 'ANY KIND'

1. Note the following difficult idioms. Refer also to 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 25.

(a) 'I can write on any kind of paper' = *kaisā hī kāghaz kyūn na-ho, main us par khatt likh-saktā hūn*.

(b) 'However pretty a woman may be he won't even look at her' = *kaisī hī khūb-sūrat 'aurat kyūn na-ho (magar) wuh uskī taraf nazar uṭhākar nahīn dekhtā*.

(c) 'Whatever his caste may be I don't want to engage him' = *us kī zāi kuchh hi kyūn na-ho, main usko naukar rakhnā nahīn chāhtā hūn*.

(d) 'I don't want to engage him, whatever sort of man he may be' = *wuh kaisā hī ādmī kyūn na-ho, main usko naukar rakhnā nahīn chāhtā*.

*Note.—Kyūn na-ho* must always follow after *kitnā hī*, *kaisā hī*, or *kuchh hī*.

2. An alternative for *kaisā hī* — *kyūn na-ho* is *khwāh* (or *chāhe*) *kaisā hī ho*, as: *Khwāh tum uske sāth kitnī hī bhalī, ī karo* (or *kyūn na-karo*) *lekin wuh tumhāre sāth burā, ī sc pesh ā, eqā.*

### LXV. IDIOMS FOR TIME

*Bārah par tīn baje* = 'three o'clock'. This idiom can only be used when the hands of the clock make less than two right angles. Thus, *bārah par pānch baje* is correct for 'five o'clock', but *bārah par chha baje* is not correct.

### LXVI. WAYS OF EXPRESSING 'TO HAVE'

1. For the various ways of expressing 'to have', vide 'Hindustani Stepping Stones', Lesson 10, *h.*

2. Note the following:—

- |                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| (1) I have two children.  | <i>Mere [hān] do larke kain.</i>  |
| (2) I have two pupils.    | <i>Mere pās do larke hain.</i>  |
| (3) I have two slaves.    | <i>Mere pās do ghulām hain.</i>   |
| (4) I have two daughters. | <i>Mere [hān] do betiyān hain</i><br>is better than<br><i>merī do betiyān hain.</i> |

### LXVII. APPENDIX

Translate the following and then compare your translation with that given at the end:—

- (1) If you ask me I should say he was a fool. (Direct narration.)
- (2) Though in the possession of eyes you behaved like a blind person. (Use present participle for 'though').
- (3) He chuckled aloud; laughed audibly. (Use conjunctive participle.)

- (4) Whatever I said he kept writing down.
- (5) Until I got your letter from Rangoon (with your address) how could I write to you ? (What tense after *jab tak* ? What tense in the *jazā* ?)
- (6) I have no book fit to offer you.
- (7) He had not sufficient sagacity to understand this hint.  
(Write 'where had he sufficient sagacity that he—?')
- (8) Can you hear ? (*Sunā, i denā.*)
- (9) There is a strong rumour that the Governor will come here ; well, let us see when he will come.
- (10) I was afraid the gate might be shut. (*Mujhe khauf thā ki—.*)
- (11) I was afraid he would not come.
- (12) I was afraid he would come.
- (13) I am glad you have come.
- (14) I regret having come. (Direct narration.)
- (15) Ask if this is true. (Not *agar*.)
- (16) It is my custom to do this daily.
- (17) I thought of doing so.
- (18) He is coming from the opposite direction.
- (19) I am fortunate in seeing you.
- (20) I am at a loss how to act ; I do not know how to act.
- (21) I regret having given him leave. (Direct narration.)
- (22) He said he was expecting you.
- (23) They agreed to go together. (Direct narration.)
- (24) I entreat you to forgive me. (Resp. Imper.)
- (25) I wonder why he is so late.
- (26) Thinking that it would be of no use to you I didn't give it to you.. (Direct narration.)
- (27) Everyone will be given whatever he wants. (*Vide H.S.S., Lesson 27, j.*)
- (28) There is no such verse in the Quran as you describe.
- (29) As soon as you came I left. (Infinitive and the 'aur of concomitance').

- (30) I don't know who he is ; but stay, I think I have seen him somewhere.
- (31) Let alone *drinking* wine, I have never even *seen* any.
- (32) Set aside threatening my boy, you are at liberty to beat him.

## TRANSLATION

- (1) *Agar mujh se pūchhiye to main to yihī kahūngā ki wuh almaq hai.*
- (2) *Ānkhon ke hote* (or *ānkhen hote*) *tum andhe ban-ga,e.*
- (3) *Wuh khilkhilā-kar hans-parā.*
- (4) *Jo main kahṭā-gayā wuh likhtā-gayā.*
- (5) *Jab tak āp kā khatt Rangūn se na-ā,e* (not *āyā*, nor *ātā*) *main āp ko kyān-kar likh-saktā* (or *likhtā*) ?
- (6) *Mere pās aisī ko,ī kitāb nahīn hai jo qabil Huzūr ke ho* (not *hai*).
- (7) *Us ko itnī firāsat kahān thi ki is īmā ko samajh-letā ?*
- (8) *Tum ko sunā,ī detā hai ?*
- (9) *Hākim ke āne kī khabar garm hai, dekhiye kab ā,e ?*  
(or *ātā hai*, but not *ā,egā*, vide XXXVI, 10).
- (10) *Mujhe khauf thā phāṭak band na-ho.*
- (11) *Mujhe khauf thā ki aisā na-ho ki wuh na-ā,e* (or —*thā ki wuh na-ā,e*).
- (12) *Mujhe ḍar thā ki aisā na-ho ki wuh ā-jā,e* (or —*thā ki wuh ā-jā,e*).
- (13) *Main khush hūn jo tum ā,e (not ā,e ho).*
- (14) *Pachtātā hūn ki, ' Main kyān āyā ? '*
- (15) *Pūchho ki* (or *āyā) yih sach hai yā nahīn.*
- (16) *Merī yih 'ādat hai ki roz roz yih kartā hūn.*
- (17) *Mere dil men khiyāl āyā ki aisā karūn* (not Future).
- (18) *Wuh udhar se* (or *sāmne se*) *ā-rahā hai.*
- (19) *Mere achchhe nāsīb hain jo<sup>1</sup> āp ko dekhā* (but —*āp ko dekhtā hūn* = 'I see you alive').
- (20) *Hairān hūn ki kyā karūn.*

<sup>1</sup> Better to omit *main ne*, vide LXII, 1-2.

- (21) *Sar pīṭne kī bāt hai ki 'Main ne us ko kyūn rukhsat dī ?'*
- (22) *Āp kā nām leke kahā ki 'Main un kā intizār kartā hūn'.*
- (23) *Wuh muttafiq hū,e ki 'Ham ek-sāth chalen'.*
- (24) *Khudā ke liye merā quşūr mu'āf kijiye (or iltimās kartā hūn ki—).*
- (25) *Ta'ajjub hai ki 'Uske pahunchne men itnī der kyūn lagī ?'*
- (26) *Main yih samajh-kar ki 'Yih tumhāre kis kām kā hai ?' tumhen na-dī.*
- (27) *Jis ko jo chīz matlūb ho dī-jā, egī.*
- (28) *Qurān men jo āp batāte hain aisī ko, ī āyat nahīn hai.*
- (29) *Tumhārā yahān ānā thā aur merā yahān se chalā-jānā.*
- (30) *Main is ko nahīn pahchāntā hūn magar hān khiyāl ātā hai ki is ko kahān dekhā hai.*
- (31) *Sharāb kā pīnā to kahān tak, main ne sharab kī shakl tak nahīn dekhī.*
- (32) *Mere larke ko dānṭnā kyā, balki tum usko mār-sakte<sup>1</sup> ho (or mār bhī sakte ho, or mar tak sakte ho).*

<sup>1</sup> For human beings *mār-nā* usually means 'to beat', and not 'to kill', but for animals with or without *ko* it usually means 'to kill', but the context makes the meaning clear : *Is khaṭmal ko māro* obviously could not mean 'beat this bug', and *Is billī ko māro* (unless the addressee had a gun) would naturally mean 'beat or drive away this cat'. In *Larā,ī men main ne dushman he do afsar māre* obviously the meaning is 'killed'.



## INDEX

(H.S.S. = 'HINDUSTANI STEPPING STONES.')

- A*-*out*, to be about to, p. 19.  
*ādhā*, colloq. for *ādhā*, H.S.S., 4, g. and n. 3.  
 Adjectives, p. 8; not always in agreement with noun, H.S.S., 15, g. and 27, d; pron. adj., 16, c: Ar. adj. with gen.; some adjs. and advs. = preps.; *lāj* *kī* *achchī*, 28, i; adjs. as advs.: agreeing with a cognate infin. unders., 31, c.  
 Admit, admitted, and *to*, p. 22.  
 Adverbs and adverbial phrases, p. 14; adverbial phrases: adjs. as advs.: exs.: postpositions added to, H.S.S., 31, c.  
 Affirmative and negative sentences, omission of *thā*, p. 111.  
 Afraid, to be, p. 75.  
*agar*, p. 11; *agar* and *jab* idiomatically omitted, H.S.S., 25, m, and n. 3 (p. 137), and 29, c.  
*Agarhi*, p. 103; correlatives of, p. 101.  
 Agency, noun of, *vide* Noun.  
 Agent case, pp. 2, 111.  
 Agree, to, idiom, H.S.S., p. 171.  
*āhū*, sing. or pl., H.S.S., 10, c (p. 49 and n. 1).  
*aisā*, before an antecedent, p. 12; *aisā* and *waisā* contr. for *yih-sā*, etc., H.S.S., 13, f; *aisā* and pron. adjs. and interrs.; *aisā* for *aisā waisā*, 16, c.  
*ā-jānā*, generally = to come unexpectedly, H.S.S., 17, g (p. 93 and n. 1).  
*ākhir* *ko* and *bare*, difference between, p. 16.  
 Albeit, p. 103.  
 Almost, p. 18.  
 Already, expressed by *chuknā*. *vide* *Chuknā*.  
 Also, pp. 19-20: not only—but also, *vide* Only.  
 Although, p. 103; correlatives to, p. 104; though, even though, p. 103; *vide* *Hokar* and *Lākh*.  
 Amusing, idiom, H.S.S., Appendix B (p. 171).  
*ānā*, compared with *jānā*, p. 25; *jānā* and *chālnā*, idiomatic use and differences, pp. 25-6; in compounds, H.S.S., 11, i.  
 Antecedent to relative, pp. 11-14; qualified by *aisā*, p. 12.  
 Any kind, *vide* However.  
 Aorist, for imperf., pp. 13-14; aor. or pres. subj., pp. 39-45; as finite verb, etc., and in questions, pp. 39-40; as subord. verb and for past time, 40-1; after *qabl is-ke*, etc.; in direct narration; after conditional *jab*, p. 41.  
*āp*, p. 9: honorific; in Delhi used for 2nd pers. pl., H.S.S., 14, d.  
*āpā*, H.S.S., 12, e.  
*apnā*, pp. 10-11; use of *apnā* and acc., H.S.S., 12, c; omission of *apnā*, 17, g (p. 92 and n. 1).  
 Apodosis, usually preceded by *to*, p. 95; plur. in, p. 101.  
 Appendix, idiomatic exs.: Eng., pp. 114-16; Hindu, 116-17.  
 Apposition, pp. 108-10; condensing and ex., correct and incorrect; repetition in a summary of subj. or obj. in long sentences, pp. 108-10; nouns of quantity and fractions; a pl. noun and proper name; *nām* or *nāmī*; *karke* = as, p. 110; meaningless appositive, H.S.S., 24, c, and apposition, 13, f.

- As*, as by degrees, p. 17; *vide* Because.
- Ashāb*, sing. m. and pl. m., p. 1.
- Asyndetic sentences, pp. 104-5.
- Asyndeton, p. 104, n. 1.
- Atā*, sing., p. 1.
- At last, p. 16.
- Awqāt*, pl. m. and sing. f., p. 1.
- Aur*, of concomitance, p. 14; *aur* = but, p. 14; ellipsis of, p. 105; as pron. adj., H.S.S., 2, b; pleonastic and elliptical, 16, d and h (p. 87 and n. 3); expressing contrast, surprise, simultaneity, and idioms with, 20, c.
- Auxiliary of present tense suppressed in negative sentences, p. 38.
- Āyā* and *kyā*, position of, p. 108.
- Bachā-rahnā*, *bache-rahnā*, *bach-rahnā*, H.S.S., 14, a (p. 72 and n. 1).
- Birhā-rakhnā*, to save, H.S.S., Appendix B (p. 178).
- Bachānā* and *brachnā*, vide *Chhūtnā*.
- Badan*, unders., H.S.S., pp. 45 and n. 3, 51, 124 and n. 2.
- Bahut*, followed by sing. or pl. noun, H.S.S., 2, d.
- Baijhe-bihāe*, adv., H.S.S., p. 130 and n. 2.
- Baijhna*, p. 26: past part. of, p. 55; in compounds, H.S.S., 11, g.
- Bajnā*, p. 26.
- Baj-lenā*, no ne, p. 3.
- Baknā*, no ne, p. 2.
- Balā*, idiom with, *vide* Terrible.
- Balki*, *ki* as substitute for, H.S.S., 26, e (7), and note; enhansive and not exceptive; always follows a neg.; means 'instead of', 30, e; *vide* also But.
- Ban-ānā*, idiom with pres. part. of another verb, p. 75.
- Banjnā* and *bannā*, idiomatic meanings of, p. 26.
- Bār*, *vide* *Martaba*.
- Bāre* and *ākhir ko*, difference between, p. 16.
- Baroly, ride Hardly.
- Baz*, *az bas ki*, H.S.S., 26, a-c.
- Bāt*, unders. and exs., H.S.S., pp. 71, 98 and n. 1, 103 and n. 2, 147 and n. 2.
- Batānā*, vulg. for *dikhānā*, H.S.S., p. 120, n. 1.
- Be* and *bin*, position of without *kr*, H.S.S., p. 158 and n. 1.
- Because, *vide Chānki*.
- Begin, *vide Lagnā*.
- Besides, *ridē* Except.
- Better—than, *ride* Rather—than.
- Bhar*, adj., H.S.S., 7, f.
- Bhar-sak*, H.S.S., p. 76 and note.
- Bhi*, pp. 19-20; *vide Niz*.
- Bhūle se*, for *bhūl se*, H.S.S., 2, c.
- Bhūlnā*, no ne, p. 2.
- Bin*, prep., *vide Be*.
- Bolnā*, no ne, p. 2; agreeing with cognate acc., p. 3; *vide* also *Kahnā*.
- But, when to be rendered by *balki*, H.S.S., pp. 28 and n. 1, 30 and n. 2; *vide* also *Balki* and Rather.
- Cases of nouns, p. 2.
- Causals, require *se*, p. 7.
- Cent., por cent., H.S.S., 22, e.
- Chāhe*, p. 15; *chāhe-chāhe* and *kyā-kyā*, difference between, p. 15; *chāho*, p. 15; *chāhe*, *khvāh*, and *kaisāhī ho* = alternatives for *kyūn na-ho*, p. 114. *Vide Yet*.
- Chāhiye*, *chāhiyen*, and *chāhiye thā*, H.S.S., 15, b.
- Chāhnā*, ne optional, = to wish, to love, p. 27; to want, differs from *māngnā*, p. 32; with or without *ne*, H.S.S., 10, d; preceded by infin. inflected or otherwise, e; = to love and to like, f.
- Chāho*, p. 15.
- Chalā-jānā* and *chale-jānā*, p. 85.
- Chal-dēnā*, no ne, p. 3.
- Chalnā*, *vide Anā*; *chaltā hūā*, artful, p. 74, note; idiom of H.S.S., 19, b.
- Chaltā hūā* = artful, p. 74, note.

- Chane*, pl., p. 1.  
*Churchāñ*, with *par* or *sc*, H.S.S.,  
 5, ..
- Chhornā*, *vide Chhūñā*: in com-  
 pounds, H.S.S., 11, *k*, *l*; *chhor-*  
*jāñā*, *vide De-jāñā*.
- Chhūñā* and *bachnā*, idiomatic  
 difference between, p. 27.
- Chhōñā*, no *ne*, p. 2.
- Chhūñā*, used only in simple  
 sentence, idiomatic use of,  
 p. 27; fut. of, for Eng. perf.,  
 p. 46; idiom of pret., p. 58;  
 signifies already, H.S.S., 8, *b*.
- Chhūñi*, *kyūñi*, *is liye ki*, *is rāste*  
*hi*, *ki liye*, *ki rāste*, *jo ki*. *az*  
*bañ-ki*, *hūñ-āñ-ki*, H.S.S., 26, *a-c*.
- Chōñi*, *hi* = all of a sudden,  
 suddenly, p. 71.
- Collation, pp. 105-7; inversion  
 and emphasis, p. 105; exs.,  
 pp. 105-7; incorrect use of  
*rōhāñ*, p. 106; position of *ne*,  
*ko*, *nīz*, *bbī*, *hī*, and negatives  
 and interrogatives, p. 107; of  
*latāñ*, *kyā*, or *āyā*, of interrogative  
 with demonst. pron.,  
 p. 108.
- Concessional clauses, pp. 103-4;  
 allied to conditional and how  
 introduced, pp. 103-4; use of  
*hūñ-āñ-ki* and *yā ab*; even  
 though, exs., p. 104. *Vide* also  
 Conditional Sentences.
- Concord, of subj. and verb,  
 H.S.S., 27 (p. 147, n. 4), 28,  
*h-f*; subj. and pred., *g*; noun  
 and numeral, *h*.
- (a) Conditional Tense, or Past  
 Conditional (simple), pp. 60-2;  
 as Perf. Subj.; used after  
*chāhiye thāñ*, etc.; aor. may be  
 substituted, p. 60; plur. of  
*lagñā* and *sakñā* sometimes  
 substituted, pp. 61, 53 (7);  
 plur. substituted, p. 59 (3);  
 is indefinite, but generally  
 refers to past time, and used  
 in optative and conditional  
 clauses, pp. 95, 100-1; often  
 used for Conditional Past, 1st  
 Form, p. 91.
- (b) Conditional Past, 1st Form,  
 pp. 91-2; refers to time past,  
 present, or future; often inter-  
 changeable with conditional  
 tense (simple), p. 91; exs. of,  
 p. 92; in 'impossible' con-  
 ditions, p. 100; not always  
 interchangeable with its 2nd  
 Form, p. 101.
- (c) Conditional Past, 2nd Form,  
 or Past Perfect Subjunctive,  
 refers to past time only; re-  
 quires *ne*; when interchange-  
 able with simple conditional  
*(gīrtā)*, p. 95; in 'impossible'  
 conditions, p. 100.
- Conditions and Conditional Sen-  
 tences, pp. 95-105; prostasis  
 and apodosis, p. 95; how  
 classed; 'if' understood, p. 96;  
 'possible' conditions, pp. 96-7;  
 condition assumed to be realized,  
 p. 96; exs. of 'possible' con-  
 ditions, pp. 97-8; prostasis  
 alone hypothetical and exs.,  
 pp. 98-100; converted into  
 optatives, pp. 100-1; 'im-  
 possible' or unrealized con-  
 ditions and exs., pp. 100-3;  
 plur. in apodosis, p. 101;  
 prostasis suppressed and exs.,  
 pp. 102-3; allied to con-  
 cessional, p. 103.
- Conjunctions, etc., pp. 15-24;  
 ellipsis of, pp. 104-5.
- Conjunctive Participle, *vide* Par-  
 ticiples.
- Correlatives, pp. 11, 16-17; *to*  
 and *agar* omitted, p. 96; *to*  
 'although', etc., p. 103; H.S.S.,  
 16, *a-c*, 27, *j* (3); *agar* and *jab*,  
 29, *b*, and p. 155, n. 2.
- Dāk se*, Eng. idiom, p. 6.
- Dāñā* and *denā*, to pour; rare  
 compounds with, pp. 27, 83.
- Darnā* and *dar lagnā*, p. 27;  
 idiom with, after a pres. partic.,  
 pp. 74-5.
- Deity, sing., p. 1.
- De-jāñā* and *chhor-jāñā*, 'to  
 leave', H.S.S., p. 175 (75).

*Dekhnā* and *parhnā*, to read, pp. 27-8.  
*Dekho*, interj., pp. 27-8.  
*Dekh-pānā*, p. 33.  
*Dekh-parnā*, vide *Parnā*.  
*Dcnā*, some compounds without *m*, p. 3 : pres. and imperf. of, p. 53 ; rare compounds with inflected past part., p. 83 ; signification in compounds, H.S.S., 11, c.  
*Derī*, vulg. for *der*, H.S.S., p. 114 and n. 1.  
*Dhatū batānā*, p. 77 and note.  
*Die, to*, vide *Marnā*.  
*Dikhā-i dcnā*, no *ne*, p. 2.  
*Diqq, diq*, subst. and adj., p. 28 : *diqq k.*, idiom of, p. 28.  
Dubious tenses, pp. 88, 90, 92, 96.  
*Durdurānā*, p. 77 and note.

Either, p. 15 ; *ride* also *Yā*.  
*Ek*, def. art., or emphatic, p. 8 ; indef. art. and also = 'about', H.S.S., 4, c.  
Ellipsis, Omission, and Insertion, pp. 110-12 ; of obj., p. 110 ; of subj., p. 110 : of subst. verb, pp. 53, 111, and H.S.S., 9, d, and 15, d ; of *n* of pl. subst. verb, p. 112 ; of *ne*, *ko*, and *se*, pp. 3-7 ; of demons. pron., p. 10 ; of poss. pron., pp. 10-11 ; of conjunctions, of *aur*, pp. 103-5.  
Emphasis, *ride* Collocation.  
Enough, p. 8.  
Epithet, fresh, in repetition of grief, p. 2.  
Euphemisms, H.S.S., pp. 168-70, and p. 179, 'son.'  
Even though, p. 103, and H.S.S., 25, c ; vide also *bhi* and *tak*, H.S.S., 29, b, and 30, d.  
Ever and never, p. 16.  
Everywhere, H.S.S., p. 87, n. 1.  
Except and besides, H.S.S., 30, b.  
Eye, catch the eye of, idiom, H.S.S., p. 26.  
*Farmānā*, use of, H.S.S., 22, a (2).  
Fractions, in apposition, p. 109 ; when not repeated with numeral, H.S.S., p. 127 and n. 2.

Future Tense (simple), pp. 45-8 ; indicates def. fut. ; used after verbs of hoping, fearing, certainty, etc., p. 45 ; in conditions, pp. 45-6 ; after *goyā* ; fut. of *chuknā* ; *lagnā*, with an insin. for fut. ; of *honā* for past time, p. 46 ; for Eng. fut. perf., pp. 46, 93-4 ; in commands, pp. 46-7 ; substitute of aor., p. 47 ; substitute of pret., p. 58 ; future of immediate intention, p. 37.  
Future Imperfect, *ride* Present Dubious, 2nd Form, p. 90.  
Future Perfect, *ride* Past Dubious, 2nd Form ; of *honā*, and Eng. fut. perf., rendered by simple fut., pp. 46, 93-4.  
*Gānā*, is intrans., admits of cognate object, p. 66.  
*Gurnā*, past part. of, p. 55.  
*Gchān*, pl., p. 1.  
Gender, masc. more worthy than fem., H.S.S., 10, j, 28, b.  
Genitive, pp. 3-4 ; idiomatically not inflected, ex., H.S.S., 26, e (13), and n. 5 ; after some adjs., 28, i ; *ride* also 'make', p. 175 ; of prons., *ride* Pronoun.  
*Gha;ab*, idiom of, *ride* Terrible.  
*Go, go-ki*, p. 103 ; correlative of, p. 103.  
Gradually, p. 71 ; *hote hote*, p. 72.  
Grierson, Dr., p. 50, and Introduction.  
*Gum-jānā*, p. 94 and n. 1 ; for *gum* vide *Pasand*.  
*Hai* and *hotā hai*, difference between, H.S.S., 1, g ; *ride* also *Hotā hai*.  
*Hājat* = prison, H.S.S., p. 81, n. 1.  
*Hāl-ān-ki*, adversative or concessional, p. 103, n. 4 ; when used, p. 103 ; H.S.S., 26, d.  
Half, 'half apiece,' idiom, H.S.S., p. 127 and n. 2.  
*Ham*, always masc., pp. 8-9 ; in speaking, p. 9.

- Hans-denā*, p. 3.  
*Horchand*, p. 103 ; correlative of, p. 103.  
 Hardly, p. 18 ; hardly, barely, not quite. H.S.S., 25, i.  
*Härrā*, ne optional, p. 3.  
*Häth* (*sc*) and *häthon* (*sc*), *sc* better omitted, p. 2.  
 Have, to, various ways of expressing, p. 114 ; H.S.S., 10, h.  
*Huvīse*, Ar. pl. and Ur. sing., p. 8.  
*Hazir* = although, vide *Lākh*.  
*Huzir* and *mawjūd*, difference between, H.S.S., 4, j.  
*Hi*, pp. 20-1 : denoting simultaneity, p. 70 ; omission of : with fut. = gradually ; *chiqte hī*, idiom, p. 71 ; enclitic and emphatic *hī*, H.S.S., 25, l, m ; *jubhī* and *tubhī*, p. 157 and n. 3.  
 Hie ! p. 28.  
*Hogū*, vide *Chihīye*.  
*Ho-jānā*, vide *Honā*.  
*Hokar*, although, pp. 29, 69 ; idioms with, p. 69.  
*Ho-leñā*, no nc. p. 3.  
*Honā* and *ho-jānā*, difference between, p. 28 : fut. and fut. perf. of *honā*, pp. 29, 46 ; fut. of, for past time, p. 46 ; past. part. of, p. 55 ; *hokar*, 'although,' and idioms with, p. 69 ; *hotā*, idioms, p. 75 ; 1st pers. sing. aor., identical with subst. verb, p. 89 ; *hotā*, conditional, for *thā*, p. 101.  
*Hotā*, idiom, p. 75 ; conditional, for *thā*, p. 101.  
*Hotā hui* and *hai*, difference between, vide *hai*, H.S.S., 1, g.  
*Hotē*, p. 29 ; *hole hole*, 'gradually,' p. 72.  
 How, no matter how, p. 19.  
 However, whatever, and any kind, and difficult idioms, p. 113.  
*Hū,ā*, *hū,e*, omission of, with parts, vide Participles.  
*Hūn*, forms of, p. 89.  
 Idioms for however, whatever, any kind, p. 113 ; for time, p. 114. Vide Appendix.
- If, p. 14 ; idiomatically omitted, p. 96 ; when not to be rendered by *agar*, H.S.S., 26, d (4), and n. 2.  
 Imperatives, respectful, polite, precative, future, pp. 48-9 ; for 2nd pers. pl. Aor. or Fut. ; used impersonally ; expressed by 3rd pers. pl. aor., p. 49 ; Inf. for Imper., pp. 51, 85, Remark.  
 Imperfect Tense, pp. 51-3 ; denotes frequency, duration, continuation, p. 51 ; progressive action, p. 52 ; denotes habit, commencement or intention, wish, p. 50 : emphatic refusal, pp. 52-3 ; omission of *thā*, etc., in ; imperf. of *denā* ; of verb compounded with *saknā*, p. 53 ; imperf. in indirect becoming pres. in direct narration, p. 53 ; for Present Dubious, p. 89 ; for Aor., pp. 13-14 ; incorrect colloquial use of, p. 90 and n. 3.  
 In, inasmuch as, H.S.S., 26, c.  
 Indefinite tense, pp. 60, 95, 100-1.  
 Infinitive, pp. 50-1 ; derivation ; as a fut. pass. part. ; as a verbal noun, p. 50 ; as a Fut. Imper., pp. 51, 85 ; Pass. Inf., p. 51 ; for Past Part., pp. 77-8 ; Inf. for Imper. is pl., p. 85 ; as a Fut. Imper., H.S.S., 10, k, n. 1, 15, c, 27, f ; inflected with *kā*, 15, d : as verb and subst., 27, a-e ; trans. used for intrans. or pass., 27, a (3), 18, c ; agreement with noun, b ; with *ko* = noun of agency, g ; idioms with, used for Aor. and noun of agency, h (and g) ; inflected before verbs of motion, etc., i ; logical subject of, l (p. 147 and n. 3).  
 Insertion, vide Ellipsis.  
 Instead, instead of, and but, vide *Balki*.  
 Intensives, vide Verbs.  
 Intention, immediate, how expressed, pp. 37, 52.

Interrogatives, pp. 107-8; begin with *k*; not first in sentence; exceptions; on *kyā* or *āyā*; with demons. pron. as substitute for rel., p. 108; indirect questions, p. 108: H.S.S., 3, *a-h*: as subj. and obj. in same sentence. *vide* pron. rel.; *vide* also Questions.

Inversion. *vide* Collocation.

*Jab*, with Aor., p. 41; with Pres. Indic., p. 42; Pret. with *jis-waqt*, but not with *jab*; as Condit. particle, p. 97 and n. 3; *jab* and *agar* idiomatically omitted, H.S.S., 25, *m*, and n. 3; *ki* and not *jab*, 28, *j*, and n. 1, 29, *e*; *jab* for *tab* and *jab jākar*, 29, *d*, 5, *f*. n. 2 (p. 27); *jabhī* = therefore, p. 157; *jab* (and *jab tak*) not followed by a past tense, 31, *b*; *jab* with *se*, 31 *c* (4), and n. 3: *jab jab* = *jab kabhī*, p. 128, n. 1; *vide* also When; *jab se* = since, *vide* Since.

*Jab tak*, p. 16; not followed by a past tense, H.S.S., 31, *b*; with neg. verb, 18, *b*.

*Jahān* = when, p. 15; *n*, nasal or otherwise, p. 15.

*Joise jaise*, p. 17.

*Jānā*, *vide Ānā*: idioms of past part., p. 79; *jānā* and *rāhnā* in compounds, 11, *h*, 12, *b*.  
*Jān-jānā* and *jān-lenā*, *vide Jānnā*.

*Jānnā*, *ne* optional, p. 3; *jānnā* and *samajhṇā*, difference between; Conj. Part.; *jāniye*, etc., *jān-jānā* and *jān-lenā*, p. 29.

*Jātā-rāhnā*, H.S.S., 12, *b* (2).

*Jau*, pl., p. 1.

*Jis-waqt*, Pret. after it, but not after *jab*, p. 96.

*Jitnā*, *ne* optional, p. 3.

*Jo-ki*, *vide Chūnki*.

*Jo jo*, p. 17.

*Jon jon* or *jyon jyon*, p. 17.

*Jori* = two of the same sex, H.S.S., 10, *c*, and n. 4.

*Jump*, to, verb for, H.S.S., p. 103, nn. 2, 3.

*Just* = *to*, p. 22.

*Kab*, *vide Kahān*.

*Kabhī*, p. 16.

*Kahān* = *kyā*. H.S.S., 3, *h*, and n. 1.

*Kahān* = not, p. 15; position in sentence and exceptions, p. 108; stress on *kahān* and *kab* alters meaning, H.S.S., 3 (p. 16 and n. 3); *kahān* of contrast, 18, *d*; used in direct and indirect questions, 3, *c*.

*Kahīn*, p. 10 = 'I fear lest' and 'never', p. 15; for *ko-i*, H.S.S., 4 (p. 23 and note).

*Kuhnā*, with *se* or *ko*; how differs from *bolnā*; *kahiye*, p. 29; *yū nahīn* or *kinahīn* omitted after, p. 108; *kahnā* and *bolnā*, difference between, H.S.S., 5, *a-c*; vulgar use of *bolnā*, *d*; compounds of, and *bolnā* with *se* or *ko*, 12, *d*.

*Kaisā hī*, *kaisā hī ho*, *kitnā hī*, and *kuchh hī*, p. 114.

*Karke*, idiomatic use of, pp. 68-9; = 'as', p. 110.

*Karnā*, with and without *ne*, p. 3; = to place, send, call, etc., pp. 29-30; *karke*, idiomatic uses of, pp. 68-9; compared with *rakhnā*, p. 34; for habit and for continued action; without *ne*; *wuh kiyū kiyū* not idiom, 10, *g*.

*Kāsh*, *kāshke*, pp. 95, 98, 101.

*Kaun* and *kyā*, difference between; used in both direct and indirect questions; *kyā* = *balki*; *kaun* with *sā* uninflected; *kyā* indicates surprise and *kyūn* merely queries, H.S.S., 3; *kaun* as a rel. pron., 26, *e* (1), n. 1.

*Ke sāih* and *se*, p. 6.

*Khub-jānā*, lit. and met., H.S.S., p. 93, n. 2.

*Khush-bū*, formerly adj., H.S.S., p. 73 and n. 1.

- Khṛāh*, p. 15; and *chāke*, and *kaisā hī ho*, alternatives for, p. 114; *vide also Yā*.
- Ki*, p. 14; = if, p. 14; *ki* and *agar*, p. 93 and note; = when suddenly, H.S.S., 28, *j*, and n. 1. *Vide also Chūnki*.
- Kind, any kind, *vide* However.
- Kirīly*, idiom for, p. 49.
- Kī'nā hī*, *kaisā hī*, etc., p. 113.
- Ko*, 4-6: omission of, after cognate acc., p. 5; *ko* and *ac* after *kahnā* and *pūchhuā*, pp. 29, 34; use and omission, H.S.S., 6, *b-i*; destroys concord, 27, *a, d*; with Infin. = noun of agency, *g*; two *ko* not in same clause, 29, *g* (p. 155, n. 1).
- Ko, i.* p. 10: and *kuchh*, begin with *k*, but not interr., p. 107; when not inflected; pl. *ka, i* always followed by a noun; *la'ze* substituted for pl.; *ko, i* for indef. art.; followed by sing. and exception, H.S.S., *a, b*; pl. of, p. 22, n. 1; for *kahīn*, p. 23 and n. 1; *ko, i-sā*, = 'any you like', 13, *d*.
- Kuchh* and *ko, i*. begin with *k*, but not interr., p. 107; *kuchh hī*, etc., p. 113; before persons and as adv., H.S.S., 4, *c*.
- Kyā*, p. 15; *kyā—kyā*, p. 15; *kyā* and *āyā*, position of, p. 108; stress on, alters meaning, H.S.S., p. 17 and n. 1; *vide also Kaun* and *Kahā*.
- Kyān*, for *kyā*, *vide Kaun*.
- Kyānki*, *vide Chūnki*.
- Lagnā* and *shurū' k.*, difference between, pp. 30-1; = 'to make ready for' and 'to undertake'; supplies place of Aor. or Fut., p. 31; = to co-habit, p. 32; after an Infin. = Subj., p. 43; with Inf. for Fut., p. 46; Plup. for Cond., p. 61.
- Lākh* = although, H.S.S., p. 138 and n. 5.
- Lānā*, no *ne*, p. 2; compared with *rakhnā*, pp. 34-5.
- Larnā*, agreeing with cognate acc., p. 3.
- Last, at last, p. 16.
- Lautnā*, *loṭnā*, and *lūṭnā*, p. 33.
- Learn, to, *vide Parhnā*.
- Le-de-ke* = all, H.S.S., p. 165 and n. 1.
- Lcnā*, some compounds of, without *ne*, p. 3; significations, p. 32; compounded with parts., pp. 82-3.
- Less, the less, p. 17; how much the less, pp. 17-18; how much the less and much less, etc., H.S.S., 25, *d-g*.
- Lest, *kahīn* for lest, pp. 15-16; lest and *ki*, H.S.S., 26, *e* (8), and note.
- Let alone, p. 18.
- Liye, is liye ki, kis liye ki*, *vide Chūnki*.
- Log*, requires *ko*, pp. 1-2.
- Look here! p. 28.
- Loṭnā*, p. 33.
- Lūṭnā*, p. 33.
- Make, to, 'two miles make one *kos*', H.S.S., p. 175 (82).
- Ma'līm denā*, no *ne*, p. 3.
- Mānā ki*, concessional, p. 103 and n. 5; correlative of, p. 103.
- Māngnā*, differs from *chāhnā*, p. 32; *māngā hū, ā*, 'borrowed', not idiom, p. 77 and n. 3.
- Ma'nī*, etc., pl. masc., H.S.S., p. 156, n. 1.
- Marā, mū, ā*, pp. 33, 77.
- Marā-parnā*, p. 87.
- Marnā*, past parts., p. 33; *marne-wālā* = 'late', p. 72; *mū, ā*, p. 77; how used, H.S.S., p. 170 and n. 2; *marne-wālā* = 'late' and 'dying', 29, *g*, and n. 3.
- Marnā* and *marā-jānā*, H.S.S., 6, *i*, 11, *f*, and note.
- Marne-wālā* = late, p. 72; *vide also Marnā*.
- Martaba* and *bār*, masc. or fem., H.S.S., 22, *f*, and n. 3.
- Mat*, pp. 22-3; vulg. for *mabādā* or *ki*, H.S.S., 26, *e* (8), and note.

- Manjūd* and *hāzir*, vide *Hāzir*.  
*Men*, pp. 4, 6, 7; *men kā* and  
*men se*, p. 7; peculiar use of  
*men* and *se*, H.S.S., 19, *d*.  
*Milānā* and *milnā*, with *ko* and *se*,  
p. 33; *vide also Milnā*.  
*Milnā*, mistaken for passive, p. 65;  
*vide also Milānā*: with *se* and  
*ko*, H.S.S., 13, *h*.  
*Miyān*, vide *Sāhib*.  
*Molnā*, used in Calcutta, H.S.S.,  
p. 35 and n. 1.  
More, the more, and how much  
the more, p. 17; the more—  
the less, and how much the  
more, H.S.S., 25, *d, c*.  
*Mñā*, vide *Marnā*.  
Much the more, much the less,  
*ride More, Less, and Bahut*.  
*Mushābahat*, p. 6.  
*Mushābih*, p. 6.  
*Muskurā-denā*, no *ne*, p. 3.
- N*, letter, pp. 1, 5; omission and  
insertion in pl. verb, p. 112.  
*Na*, pp. 23–4; with compound  
verbs, p. 24; vulg. for ‘no’,  
H.S.S., p. 26 and n. 1; in ques-  
tions indicates surprise, 20, *b*.  
*Nahīn* to and otherwise, p. 16;  
*nahīn* and *na* with compound  
verbs, p. 24; position with  
*saknā*, H.S.S., 8, *c*.  
*Nām* or *nāmī*, in apposition,  
p. 110; H.S.S., 31, *f* (2).  
Name, *vide Noun*.  
Narration, direct or indirect, may  
follow Hist. Pres., p. 37; direct,  
p. 107; general; of stories,  
p. 113; direct or indirect after  
certain verbs, H.S.S., 17, *b-d*;  
example, *g*.  
*Ne*, use and omission before  
certain verbs, pp. 2–3; position  
with several subjects and in  
apposition, p. 3.  
Nearly, p. 18; how expressed,  
H.S.S., 14, *e*.  
Negatives, pp. 16, 22–4; *kahān*,  
not, p. 15; *nahīn* or *na*, H.S.S.,  
15, *b*; *na* repeated, and re-  
dundant *aur*, 16, *d*.
- Neither—nor, pp. 23–4; H.S.S.,  
16, *d*; p. 88, n. 2.  
Never, *kahān*, p. 15; never and  
ever, p. 16.  
*Nīz* and *bhī*, position and use,  
p. 19; H.S.S., 29, *b*.  
No matter how, H.S.S., 25, *b*;  
*vide also Not*.  
No matter how, p. 19.  
No sooner than, pp. 19, 70.  
Nominative, p. 2; nominative ab-  
solute, pp. 11–12, H.S.S., 31, *e*.  
Not, expressed by *kahān*, p. 15.  
Nothing, to say nothing of, idiom,  
p. 18.  
Notwithstanding, pp. 7, 104.  
Noun, cases of nouns, p. 2; nouns  
of quantity in apposition, p. 110;  
pl. noun in apposition to proper  
name, p. 110; noun of agency,  
*vide Wālā*; sing. or pl. after  
**baht**, H.S.S., 2, *d*; second  
only of two nouns inflected, 2, *e*  
(p. 12), 31, *d*; gender of com-  
pound nouns and exception,  
10, *j*, 18, *e*, n. 2; number  
after numeral, 15, *f*, 28, *h*;  
prop. name substituted for  
ambiguous pron., 17, *e*; two  
nouns coupled by *aur* = Eng.  
subst. and adj., 24, *d*; class  
noun, masc. or fem., 29, *f*, and  
n. 2; nouns of number, measure,  
etc., in apposition, 31, *f*.  
Numerals, p. 8; as summary of sub-  
jects, p. 112; followed by sing.  
or pl. noun, H.S.S., 28, *g-h*.  
*Nūn-i ghunna*, pp. 1, 5.
- Object and subject, repetition or  
summary of, p. 109; obj. and  
subj. to be stated but once, *vide*  
Ellipsis, pp. 110–12; interr. and  
rel. as subj. and obj. in same  
sentence, H.S.S., 27, *j* (1), (2);  
*vide also Subject and Relative*.  
Of and *-ki*, H.S.S., 26, *e* (10).  
Offer, to, express by *denā*, p. 53.  
Omission, of *thā* of the imperf.,  
p. 53; *vide Ellipsis*; of *kar* of  
conj. part., H.S.S., p. 130 and  
n. 1, p. 131, n. 2.

- Only, not only—but also, H.S.S., 25, *j.*
- Opposite, *sāmne* and *āmne sāmne*, H.S.S., p. 132, n. 1.
- Optative Tense, pp. 95, 60; Past Opt., how rendered, p. 101 (12); optative clauses, introduced by *kāsh*, p. 95; exs. of, p. 98; can be converted into conditions, pp. 100-1; tenses used in optative clauses, 95 (2), 101 (12), (13).
- Or, p. 15; *ki*=or, H.S.S., 26, *e* (5).
- Order of words, *vide Collocation*.
- Otherwise, p. 16.
- Pakrī-i denā*, no *ne*, p. 3.
- Pānā*, with and without *ne*, p. 3; *dckh-pānā* and *sun-pānā*, p. 33.
- Par*, p. 7.
- Parā-rakhnā*, an exception, p. 87.
- Parhānā*, with *se* or *ko*, H.S.S., 21, *d.*
- Parhnā*, *vide Dekhnā*: *parhnā* or *sikhnā*, to learn, study, H.S.S., p. 111 and n. 1.
- Par-jānā*, *vide Parnā*.
- Parnā*, in compounds, p. 33; *parnā* and *poy-jānā*, substitutes for *henā* and *ho-jānā*, pp. 33-4; idiomatic use of perf., p. 34; past part., p. 55; signification in compounds, H.S.S., 11, *d*; used met. and exceptions, *m* and nn. 3, 4; idioms with, 13, *i*; *parcyā*, *hogā*, and *chāhiye*, with dat., 15, *b*.
- Participles: *Conj. Part.*, pp. 63-9; rule for use and exception, pp. 63-4; not used before subst. verb; use in negative clauses, p. 64; pass. not used, pp. 64-5; with neut. finite verb; with *milnā*; how repeated, p. 65; is temporal, logical, or adverbial, pp. 65-6; misrelated part., pp. 66-7; may refer to direct object, 67; ambiguous and difficult usages, p. 68; idiomatic *karke*, pp. 68-9; idiomatic *hokar*, p. 69; compared with Past Part., pp. 78-9; *Conj. Part.*, *kar* not repeated, H.S.S., 24, *e* (pp. 130, n. 1, 131, n. 2); *barhkar* and *khāss-kar*, advs., 9, *c*.
- Present Part.*, pp. 69-77; used as subst., adj., etc., p. 70; adverbial part. with *hū*, pp. 70-1; as qual. adj., p. 71; = noun of agency, pp. 71-2; as adv.; expressing state of subj. or obj.; repeated and inflected; with cognate verb, p. 72; inflected or not inflected, with or without *hū, ā, hū, e*, when ambiguous, pp. 73-4; idiom with *darnā*, p. 74; with *sharm ānā* and *dar lagnā*, idioms, p. 75; idioms and examples, pp. 75-7; verbs compounded with a present part., pp. 84-6, 88; present part. of *rahnā*, H.S.S., 14, *b*.
- Past Part.* and Perfect Tense of certain verbs, pp. 55-6; as subst.; adj.; with preps.; for Inf., pp. 77-8; constr. absolutely, p. 78; compared with *Conj. Part.*, pp. 78-9; of act. trans. verbs, used passively; inflected and uninflected, pp. 79-80; idioms, p. 79; examples, 80-2; *mārā-parnā* and *parā-rakhnā*, exceptions, p. 87; with idea of continuance, uninflected and without *hū, ā*, p. 87; with some compounds *hū, ā* may be added, pp. 87-8; verbs compounded with a past part., pp. 82-8.
- Fut. Part.*, expressed by noun of agency, H.S.S., 29, *a*.
- Particles, p. 14.
- Pās*, of motion towards living things, H.S.S., 10, *i*.
- Pasand*, contr. of *pasandida*, H.S.S., 23, *b*.
- Past Tense, *vide Preterite*; Past Conditional, *vide Conditional*; *Past Dubious, 1st Form*, pp. 92-3; when interchangeable with 2nd Form, p. 92; used only in dependent clauses; examples

p. 93; *Past Dubious, 2nd Form*, pp. 93-5; used either in subord. or prin. clause; when substituted for 1st Form; indicates doubt, p. 93; examples, pp. 94-5; *Past Perfect, Subjunctive*, *vide* Conditional Past, 2nd Form, p. 95; Past Perfect, Continuous, Subjunctive, *vide* Conditional Past, 1st Form, p. 91. Perfect Tense, pp. 54-6; is Indef.; sometimes Perf. and Pret. interchangeable; expresses past time with effects continuing; for an action just completed, p. 54; in questions indicates certainty and astonishment; substituted for Eng. Perf., p. 55; Perf. or Past Part. of certain verbs and of trans. verbs, pp. 55-6; in quoting author, 56; compared with Pret. and Plup., p. 59. Persons, 1st pers. more worthy than 2nd, etc., H.S.S., 14, c; *vide* also Pronouns. Pluperfect Tense, pp. 59-60; anterior to Pret. and Perf., stated or implied; compared with Pref. and Pret.; for Past Cond.; indicates distant time, p. 59; exs., pp. 56-60. Plural or singular after numerals, p. 8. Postposition, two after one subst., H.S.S., 30, c; *tak* not always a post., d; post. added to adv., 31, c (4). Potential, Present Potential, *vide* Present Dubious, p. 88; Past Potential, *vide* Past Dubious, 1st Form, p. 92. Pour to, *vide* *Dālnā*. Precative clauses, *vide* Optative. Predicate, H.S.S., 28, g. Prepositions originally nouns, p. 62. Present Tense, significations of, pp. 36-9; quoting an author Pres. or Perf. used; auxil., when suppressed, and n. of pl., p. 38; Pres. Indic. and Aor. in sayings, p. 39; after

*jab*, p. 42; for Eng. Perf., p. 55; Pres. Tense or Past Part. of *sonā*, p. 56: *Present Subjunctive*, *vide* Aorist: *Present Dubious, 1st Form*, pp. 88-90; used only in dep. clauses, p. 88; for Aor. and for Fut. Imperf. or 2nd Pres. Dub.; refers to time, past, pres., or fut.; after indef. antecedents, p. 89; exs., pp. 89-90: *Present Dubious, 2nd Form*, pp. 90-1; can be used in prin. clause, p. 90; for time past, pres., or fut.; can take place of Imperf. Indic.; ex., p. 91.

Preterite Tense, pp. 56-8; is definite; in a series of events and for Eng. Plup., p. 56; an act just completed; indicates doubt or ignorance, pp. 56-7; in fut. conditions; for Aor., p. 57; in simultaneity, pp. 57-8; for immediate fut.; of *chuknā*; substituted for Perf.; for habitual present; idioms, p. 58; compared with Perf. and Plup., p. 59; in conditions, p. 96; used after *jis waqt*, but not after *jab*, p. 96; used after *ba'd us-ke*, p. 41.

Progressive action, *vide* *Rahnā*. Pronoun, pp. 8-14: personal, pp. 8-10: indefinite, possessive, p. 10: demons., pp. 10, 12; omission of, *vide* Ellipsis, pp. 110-12: for relative pronouns, *vide* Relative: use of *merā*, *hamārā*, etc., in Lucknow and Delhi, H.S.S., 1, j, and n. 2; for other poss. pron., *vide* *Apnā*: demons. and pers., pl. of, 3, g; *aisū* and *waīsū*, contracs., 13, f; true genitives of pers. prns., 13, g; pron. and prop. name, 17, e; omitted, 19, b; rel. pron. as subj. and obj. in same sentence; place supplied by rel. adv., 27, j (1), (3); *vide* also *Kaun* and *Ki*, 26, d, and n. 1, 27, j (2); interrogatives, *vide* Interrogatives, and 26, d, n. 1, 27, j.

INDEX

129

- Prestasis or if-clause, introduced by *ja*, *agar*, or *jah*, p. 95; *tha* for *hotā* in, p. 101; suppressed, p. 102.
- Pachhīmī*, with *ko* and *se*, p. 34; *yo uñhī* or *ki* omitted after, p. 108.
- Pukūrīnā*, with and without *ne*, p. 3.
- Gavār pīnā*, with and without *ne*, p. 3.
- Questions, indirect, p. 108; *na* at end indicating surprise, H.S.S., 29, b.
- Qizānat*, idiom, *vide Terrible*.
- R, letter *r*, p. 1.
- Rahnd*, p. 34: *rahā hai* = *holā hī*, p. 34; expresses continuous action, p. 37; progressive action, p. 52; suffixed to a pres. part., H.S.S., 14, b; in compounds, *vide Jānā*, 11, h.
- Kakhnā*, *farmā*, and *lānā*, idiomatic differences, pp. 34-5; *rahe-rahnā*, p. 84; in compounds, 11, j.
- Rather than, H.S.S., 25, k, 26, e (14); rather, but, nay, 26, e (7).
- Ratnā* or *rat lagñānā*, p. 102, n. 1.
- Relative, *yih* or *wuh* = Eng. rel. pron., p. 10; rel. pron., pp. 11-14; as subj. and obj. in same sentence, H.S.S., 27, j; constr. of rel. and corr., 16, b; *vide also Pronoun*.
- Repetition of a word, p. 110 and H.S.S., 24; of obj. or subj. with several verbs, pp. 110-12; of numeral only with fraction, as *särhe*, H.S.S., 24, e (p. 127 and n. 2); *jab jab* = *jab kabhī*, p. 128 and n. 1); *üpār üpar* = 'direct', p. 131 and n. 3.
- Ro-dend*, no *ne*, p. 3; *ro-lend*, no *ne*, p. 3.
- Roz-marra*, subst. and adv., H.S.S., 15, i and n. 1.
- Rüñhnā*; used sp. of equals and of children, H.S.S., p. 157 and n. 2.
- Se*, H.S.S., 13, b-f, and 24, c (p. 129, n. 4).
- Sab*, as summary of subjects, p. 112.
- Sahī* and *rahā-sahā*, H.S.S., 29, c and f.
- Sāhib* and *miyān*, with sing. or pl. verb, H.S.S., 1, j, and 8, c.
- Sahī salāmat*, p. 1.
- Saknā*, used only in compounds, p. 35; Imperf. of, takes place of Condit., pp. 53, 61; *sakte bhar*, p. 76 and n. 5; with inflec. infin., vulg., H.S.S., 9, e; position of *nahīn* with, 8, c.
- Salāmat*, subst. and adj., p. 1.
- Samajhnā*, none, p. 2; *vide Jānā*; prop. intr., H.S.S., p. 36 and n. 2; *samajhnā*, etc., and *sikhnā*, p. 111 and n. 2.
- Sambhālnā*, old form *sambhālnā*, H.S.S., p. 78 and n. 2.
- Sāth denā*, no *ne*, p. 3.
- Say, to say nothing of, idiom, *ride Less*.
- Saying that, expressed by *ki*, H.S.S., 26, e (6).
- Scarcely, p. 18.
- Se*, pp. 2, 6-7; *se* and *men*, peculiar use of H.S.S., 19, d; *se* with adv., 31, c.
- Servile verbs, H.S.S., 11, a-m.
- Sharmānā* and a pres. part., p. 75.
- Shāyad*, corresponds to a prin. clause, p. 90 and n. 4; tenses after, p. 91.
- Shukr* or *taslim*, *vide Thanks*.
- Shurū' k*, *vide Lognā*.
- Sikhnā*, *ne* optional, p. 3; or *parhnā*, *vide Parhnā*.
- Since, temp., with neg. verb, H.S.S., 31, d; *jab se* and *kab se*, c (4). *Vide As and Because*.
- Singular or plural after numerals, p. 8.
- So*, corr. so rare, H.S.S., 16, a (p. 83 and n. 1); = 'therefore', 'so', 16, h.
- So*, so that, *ki* and *tā ki*, H.S.S., 26, e (9); expressed by *so*, 16, h.
- Sochnā*, no *ne*, p. 2.
- So-lēnā*, no *ne*, p. 3.

- Son, idioms for, H.S.S., p. 179 (138).
- Sonā*, past part. of pp. 55, 56; pres. tense of, p. 56.
- Soon, as soon as, no sooner than, etc., pp. 19, 70; and H.S.S., 25, *h*. 27, *h*.
- Stories of professional story-tellers, *vide* Narration.
- Study, to, *vide* *Parhnā*.
- Subject and object, repetition or summary of, in a long sentence, p. 109; subj. and obj. stated but once, *vide* Ellipsis, pp. 110-12; *sab* as summary, p. 112; subj. and obj. when not repeated, H.S.S., 19, *c*; subj. of pass. verb in acc., 23, *c*; gram. subj. omitted in affirm. sentences, *d* and Remark; rel. and interr. pron., etc., as subj. and obj. in same sentence, 27, *j*; logical subj. of Inf. *l*, p. 147 and n. 3; sing. subj. with a pl. predicating noun, 28, *g*.
- Subjunctive Mood, *vide* Aorist, p. 39; Pres. Dub., p. 88; 1st Past Condit., p. 91; 2nd Past Cond., p. 95.
- Substantive, *vide* Noun.
- Substantive verb, *vide* Verb.
- Suddenly = *chūte hī*, p. 71.
- Sunā, i denā*, no ne, p. 2.
- Suniye*, or *suno*, interj., p. 28.
- Sun-pānā*, p. 33.
- Suppose and admit, *vide* particle *sahī*.
- Ta'ajjub nahin*, tense after, p. 91.
- Tab* and *tabhī*, *vide* *Jab*.
- Tā ham*, p. 103 and n. 1.
- Tahān*, old corr. of *jahān*, H.S.S., 16, *a* (p. 83, n. 2), *i* (p. 87, n. 1).
- Tain ne* and *tain hī ne*, vulg., H.S.S., 25, *l* (p. 137 and n. 1).
- Taisā, taise taise*, p. 17; *taisā*, obs., H.S.S., 16, *a* (p. 83 and n. 1).
- Tak*, p. 8 = 'even'; not a post-position, H.S.S., 30, *d*.
- Tanga*, 'defile,' 'pass,' used on N.W. Frontier, H.S.S., 28, *d* (p. 149 and n. 1).
- Tāqat*, unders., H.S.S., 11, *m* (p. 61 and n. 1).
- Taslim* or *shukr*, *vide* Thanks.
- Tau bhī*, p. 103 and n. 3.
- Teach, to, *vide* *Samajhnā*.
- Tenses, sequence of, with suppressed prostasis, pp. 102-3.
- Terrible, idiom for, H.S.S., 7, *h* (p. 34 and n. 2), 9, *f* (p. 46 and n. 3), 14, *f* (2 exs.).
- Thā* for *hotā*, p. 101.
- Thaharnā*, idiomatic meanings, pp. 35-6.
- Than, rather than and *ki*, H.S.S., 26, *c* (14).
- Thanks, idiom of *shukr* and *taslim*, H.S.S., 15, *e*.
- That, *vide ki*; 'in that,' H.S.S., 26, *e* (12).
- Though, even though, *vide* Although and Even though.
- Time, idioms for, p. 114; H.S.S., 31, *g* (p. 165 and n. 3); day of Hindus and Muslims, how computed, App. A, *a* (p. 168).
- Tin* and *terah*, idiom, H.S.S., 20, *d* (p. 108, n. 4).
- To*, particle, p. 21; *to nahin*, p. 22; as correlative, p. 95; unders., p. 96; H.S.S., 29, *b*, *g* (p. 155, n. 2).
- Too much, p. 8, and H.S.S., 2, *a*.
- Topic, unpleasant, how introduced, H.S.S., App. A, *b* (4).
- Tornā*, *vide* *Tūtnā*.
- Tum*, in address, p. 9.
- Tūtnā* and *tornā*, change of *t*, H.S.S., 9, *a* (p. 43).
- Until, *vide* *Jab tak*.
- Upar īpar* = direct, H.S.S., 24, *f* (p. 131 and n. 3).
- Ūthā-rakhnā*, *vide* *Ūjhna*.
- Ūjhna*, signification in compounds, H.S.S., 11, *e*; *ūthā-rakhnā*, 11, *e*, *l* (p. 61 and n. 2).
- Verb, general, pp. 24-5; special verbs, pp. 25-36; tenses of, pp. 36-95; verbs compounded with parts., pp. 82-8; *denā*, *lenā*, *qālnā*, *jānā*, *rahnā*, *rakhnā*

(*rakhe-rahnā*), with past part., pp. 83-5; past part., prefixed to subst. verb, p. 84; and examples of, pp. 85-6; past part. and intrans. servile verb, p. 86; compounded with *parnā*, *phirnā*, etc., pp. 86-7; omission of verb subst. in Imperf., Perf., Plup., pp. 53 (5), 111 (3); omission and insertion of *n* of pl., p. 112; 1st pers. Aor. of *honā* and subst. verb identical, p. 89, Remark; *thā* for *hotū*, 101 (15); compound verbs, H.S.S., 11, *a-k*; simple verb in neg. and proh. sentences, *l*; verbs of seeing, asking, etc.; direct or indirect narration, 17, *b-d*; trans. verbs signifying on purpose, intrans. by accident, *f*; causal, trans., and intrans. verbs; *parhānā* with *se* and *ko*, 21, *d-e*; verbs compounded with a subst., adj., etc., 22, *a-b*; constr. in act. and pass. may be different, *c*. Vocative, two forms, p. 2; in repetition of grief, p. 2; voc. sing. followed by either sing. or pl. verb, H.S.S., 7, *g*.

*Wahān*, incorrect use of, p. 106.

*Wa-illā*, p. 16.

*Waise waise*, p. 17.

*Wālā*, suffix, pp. 62-3; added to preps. and advs., not to adjs.; substitute for genitive,

p. 62; indicates habit or continuance, and an act past or in immediate future; is ambiguous, p. 63; *marne-wālā* = late, p. 72, and H.S.S., 29, *g*; H.S.S., 29, *a*.

*Warna*, p. 16.

*Wāste*, vide *Liye*.

Whatever, vide *However*.

When and *jahān*, p. 15; Aor. or Fut. after *jab*, H.S.S., 16, *g*; *jab* and *jab tak* not followed by a past tense, 31, *b*. Vide also *Jab*; for *ki* of suddenness vide *Ki*.

Where and 'the world', p. 15.

Whereas, p. 104; *yā* = whereas, H.S.S., 16, *c*; *hal-ān-ki*, 26, *d*.

Whether, p. 15; whether or not, p. 108; whether—or, vide *Yā*; whether = if, H.S.S., 26, *e* (4) and n. 2.

While, whilst, p. 14; *ki* = while, H.S.S., 26, *e* (13); vide also *Jab tak*.

*Wuh*, he, p. 10; equiv. to Eng. rel. pron., p. 10.

*Yā ab*, vide *hal-ān-ki*; *yā nahān* or *ki nahān*, omitted or not, p. 108; H.S.S., 16, *e, f*.

*Yahān*, *is jagah ke pās* or *yahān se nazdik*, but not *yahān ke pās*, H.S.S. (p. 13 and n. 2).

*Yih*, he, p. 10; = Eng. rel. pron., p. 10.

*Yūn to* = while, p. 14.



A NEW AND REVISED LIST  
OF  
TEXT BOOKS AND MANUALS  
FOR STUDENTS IN  
ORIENTAL LANGUAGES

*Many of which are used as Text Books for the  
Examinations for*

THE INDIAN CIVIL SERVICE AND  
THE INDIAN STAFF CORPS

*Also as Class Books in  
COLLEGES AND SCHOOLS IN INDIA*

---

LONDON  
CROSBY LOCKWOOD & SON  
7, STATIONERS' HALL COURT, LUDGATE HILL, E.C.  
AND  
121A, VICTORIA STREET, WESTMINSTER, S.W.

- HINDUSTANI MANUAL, containing a Compendious Grammar, Exercises for Translation, Dialogues, and Vocabulary, in the Roman Character. New Edition, entirely revised. By J. T. Platts. 18mo. 3s. 6d.
- BAGH-O-BAHAR, in the Persian Character, with a complete Vocabulary, in Persian and Roman Characters. Royal 8vo. 12s. 6d.
- BAGH-O-BAHAR, in English, with Explanatory Notes, illustrative of Eastern Character. Demy 8vo. 8s.
- BAGH-O-BAHAR, with Vocabulary. Roman Character. Crown 8vo. 5s.
- TOTA KAHANI ; or, "Tales of a Parrot," in the Persian Character, with a complete Vocabulary. Royal 8vo. 8s.
- BAITAL PACHISI ; or, "Twenty-five Tales of a Demon," in the Nagari Character, with a complete Vocabulary in the Nagari and Roman Characters. Royal 8vo. 9s.
- IKHWANU-S-SAFA : or, "Brothers of Purity," in the Persian Character. Royal 8vo. 12s. 6d.
- HOLROYD, COL. W. R. M., formerly Director of Public Instruction, Punjab.
- HINDUSTANI FOR EVERY DAY. Royal 8vo. 324 pages. 8s. net.
- KEMPSON, M., Director of Public Instruction in N.W. Provinces, 1862-78.
- FIRST FIVE CHAPTERS OF THE TAUBATU-N-NUSUH, in the Persian Character, with Marginal Analysis, additional Annotations, and Index Vocabulary. Royal 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE SYNTAX AND IDIOMS OF HINDUSTANI. A Manual of the Language; consisting of Progressive Exercises in Grammar, Reading, and Translation, with Notes, Directions, and Vocabularies. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Crown 8vo, cloth. 6s. net.
- KEY TO THE TRANSLATION EXERCISES OF SYNTAX AND IDIOMS OF HINDUSTANI, in the Roman Character. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.
- MULVIEHILL, P.
- A VOCABULARY FOR THE LOWER STANDARD IN HINDUSTANI, in the Roman Character. Containing the meanings of every word and idiomatic expression in "Jarrett's Hindu Period," and in "Selections from the Bagh-o-Bahar." Fcap. 3s. 6d.
- PHILLOTT, LIEUT.-COLONEL D. C., Secretary, Board of Examiners, Calcutta.
- HINDUSTANI STUMBLING-BLOCKS. Being difficult Points in the Syntax and Idiom of Hindustani Explained and Exemplified. Crown 8vo, cloth. 4s. 6d. net. *Just Published.*
- PINCOTT, FREDERIC, M.R.A.S.
- SAKUNTALA IN HINDI, in the Nagari Character. Translated from the Bengali recension of the Sanskrit. Critically edited, with Grammatical, Idiomatical, and Exegetical Notes. 4to. 12s. 6d.
- HINDI MANUAL. Comprising a grammar of the Hindi Language both Literary and Provincial ; a complete Syntax ; Exercises in various styles of Hindi Composition ; Dialogues on several subjects ; and a complete Vocabulary, in the Nagari and Roman Characters. Fifth edition, thoroughly revised. Fcap. 8vo. 6s.
- PLATTS, J. T., Persian Teacher at the University of Oxford.
- HINDUSTANI DICTIONARY. Dictionary of Urdu and Classical Hindi and English, in the Persian, Nagari, and Roman Characters. Super Royal 8vo. £3 3s.

**GRAMMAR OF THE URDU OR HINDUSTANI LANGUAGE.** Hindustani words in the Persian Character. Demy Svo. 12s.

**BAITAL PACHISI,** translated into English. Demy Svo. 8s.

**IKHWAN-U-S-SAFA,** translated into English. Demy Svo. 10s. 6d.

**ROGERS, E. H.**

HOW TO SPEAK HINDUSTANI; in the Roman Character. Roy. 12mo. 1s.

**SMALL, REV. G.**

**DICTIONARY OF NAVAL TERMS,** English and Hindustani. For the use of Nautical Men trading to India, &c. In the Roman Character. Fcap. Svo. 2s. 6d.

**TOLBERT, F. W. H.**

ALIF LAILA BA-ZABAN-I-URDU. (The Arabian Nights in Hindustani.) In the Roman Character. Crown Svo. 10s. 6d.

### JAPANESE.

**CHAMBERLAIN, BASIL H.** Emeritus Professor of Japanese and Philology in the Imperial University of Tokyo.

A HANDBOOK OF COLLOQUIAL JAPANESE, in the Roman Character. Fourth Edition, revised. Crown Svo. 15s.

PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF JAPANESE WRITING. It teaches the writing of the "Kana" and most useful Chinese characters, and is a Reader at the same time, with full translation. Folio. 31s. 6d. net.

**MacCAULEY, CLAY, A.M.** (President of the School for Advanced Learning, Tokyo).

AN INTRODUCTORY COURSE IN JAPANESE. Crown Svo. 10s. 6d.

### KOREAN.

**GALE, J. S.**

KOREAN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY. Super Royal Svo, cloth. 30s. net.

### MALAY.

**BIKKERS, DR. A. J. W.**

MALAY, CHINESE, FRENCH, AND ENGLISH VOCABULARY. Alphabetically arranged under each of the four languages. With concise Malay Grammar. Post Svo. 7s. 6d.

**MARSDEN'S MALAY GRAMMAR.** 4to. £1 1s.

**WILKINSON, R. J.**

A MALAY-ENGLISH DICTIONARY. In three parts. Royal 4to, about 750 pages. 50s. net, or bound in one volume, half-leather, 63s. net. The third part will be supplied at 7s. 6d. to those who have already purchased parts 1 and 2.

### PERSIAN.

**CLARKE, LIEUT.-COLONEL H. WILBERFORCE, (late) R.E.**  
THE PERSIAN MANUAL. A Pocket Companion.

A Concise Grammar of the Language, with Exercises, a Selection of Useful Phrases, Dialogues, and Subjects for Translation into Persian, and a Vocabulary of Useful Words, English and Persian, &c. 18mo. 7s. 6d.

**FORBES, DUNCAN, LL.D.**

PERSIAN GRAMMAR, READING LESSONS IN THE PERSIAN CHARACTER,  
AND VOCABULARY. Royal 8vo. 12s. 6d.

**IBRAHEEM, MIRZA.**

PERSIAN GRAMMAR, DIALOGUES, &c., in the Persian Character.  
Royal 8vo. 12s. 6d.

**KEENE, REV. E. G.**

FIRST BOOK OF THE ANWARI SOHEILI; the Text in the Persian  
Character. Demy 8vo. 5s.

AKHLAKI MUHSINI. Translated into English. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**ORIENTAL PENMANSHIP:** comprising specimens of Persian Hand-  
writing, illustrated with Facsimiles from Originals in the South  
Kensington Museum, to which are added Illustrations of the Nagari  
Character. By the late Prof. Palmer and F. Pincott. 4to. 12s. 6d.

**OUSELEY, LIEUT.-COL.**

AKHLAKI MUHSINI; the Text in the Persian Character. Demy 8vo. 5s.

**PLATTS, J. T.**, Persian Teacher at the University of Oxford.

GULISTAN; in the Persian Character. Carefully collated with the  
original MS., with a full Vocabulary. Royal 8vo. 12s. 6d.

GULISTAN. Translated from a Revised Text, with copious Notes.  
Royal 8vo. 12s. 6d.

**PLATTS, J. T.** (Persian Teacher at the University of Oxford), and  
**ROGERS, A.** (late Bombay Civil Service).

THE BÚSTÁN OF SA'ADÍ. Photographed from a Persian MS., Collated  
and Annotated. Impl. 8vo. 18s.

**ROGERS, A.** (late Bombay Civil Service).

PERSIAN PLAIS, in the Persian Character; with Literal English  
Translation and Vocabulary. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**STEINGASS, F., Ph.D.**

A COMPREHENSIVE PERSIAN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY; including the  
Arabic Words and Phrases to be met with in Persian Literature,  
being JOHNSON and RICHARDSON'S PERSIAN, ARABIC, and ENGLISH  
DICTIONARY, revised, enlarged, and entirely reconstructed. Impl.  
8vo. 1600 pages. £3 3s. net.

**TOLBORT, T. W. H.**, Bengal Civil Service.

A TRANSLATION OF ROBINSON CRUSOE INTO THE PERSIAN LANGUAGE.  
Roman Character. Crown 8vo. 7s.

**PUS'HTO.**

**RAVERTY, MAJOR H. G.**, Author of the Pus'hto Grammar and  
Dictionary.

THE PUS'HTO MANUAL. Comprising a Concise Grammar; Exercise and  
Dialogues; Familiar Phrases, Proverbs, and Vocabulary. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

**ROOS-KEPPEL, MAJOR G.** (President of Central Committee of  
Examiners in Pushtu Language).

A MANUAL OF PUSHTU. Demy 8vo, cloth. (Third Impression.)  
12s. 6d. net.

## SANSKRIT.

GOUGH, A. E.

KEY TO THE EXERCISES IN WILLIAMS' SANSKRIT MANUAL. 18mo. 4s.

HAUGHTON, G. C.

SANSKRIT AND BENGALI DICTIONARY, in the Bengali Character, with Index, serving as a reversed Dictionary. 4to. 30s.

JOHNSON, PROF. F.

HITOPADESA: the Text in Sanscrit, with Grammatical Analysis and Vocabulary in Nagari and Roman Characters. 4to. 15s.

PINCOTT, FREDERIC, M.R.A.S., &amp;c.

HITOPADESA. A new literal Translation from the Sanskrit Text of Prof. F. Johnson. For the use of Students. 6s.

WILLIAMS, MONIER.

SANSKRIT MANUAL, in the Roman Character; with a Vocabulary English and Sanscrit, in the Nagari Character, by A. E. Gough. 18mo. 7s. 6d.

## TURKISH.

TIEN, REV. ANTON, PH.D., M.R.A.S.

A TURKISH GRAMMAR, containing also Dialogues and Terms connected with the Army, Navy, Military Drill, Diplomatic and Social Life. 8vo. 420 pages. 16s.

## ORIENTAL MANUALS.

BIXKERS, DR. A. J. W.

MALAY, CHINESE, FRENCH, AND ENGLISH VOCABULARY, &amp;c. With concise Malay Grammar. Fcap. 7s. 6d.

BIRDWOOD, ALAN R.

AN ARABIC READING BOOK. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

CHAMBERLAIN, B. H.

A HANDBOOK OF COLLOQUIAL JAPANESE. Fourth Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 15s.

CLARKE, LIEUT.-COL. H. W., (late) R.E.

THE PERSIAN MANUAL. Containing a Concise Grammar, with Exercises, Useful Phrases, Dialogues, and Subjects for Translation into Persian; also a Vocabulary of Useful Words, English and Persian. Roman Character. 18mo. 7s. 6d.

DAVIDSON, LIEUT. F. A. L.

ANGLICISED COLLOQUIAL BURMESE; or, How to Speak the Language in Three Months. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

DOUGLAS, SIR ROBERT K., Professor of Chinese at King's College, London, &amp;c.

A CHINESE MANUAL, comprising Grammar, with Idiomatic Phrases and Dialogues. Fcap. 8vo. 10s. 6d. (New Edition.)



- FORBES'S HINDUSTANI MANUAL.** Containing a Compendious Grammar, Exercises for Translation, Dialogues, and Vocabulary, in the Roman Character. New Edition, entirely revised. By J. T. Platts. 18mo. 3s. 6d.
- GOUGH, A. E.**
- KEY TO THE EXERCISES IN WILLIAMS'S SANSKRIT MANUAL. 18mo. 4s.
- MACKENZIE, CAPTAIN C. F.**
- A TURKISH MANUAL. Comprising a Condensed Grammar, with Idiomatic Phrases, Exercises and Dialogues, and Vocabulary. Roman Character. Fcap. 8vo. 6s.
- NICHOLL, PROF. G. F.**
- BENGALI MANUAL; with Grammar, and course of Exercises, illustrating every variety of Idiomatic Construction, Specimens of current Handwriting. &c., and a short Asamese Grammar. Fcap. 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- PALMER, PROF. E. H., M.A.**
- THE ARABIC MANUAL. Comprising a Condensed Grammar of both Classical and Modern Arabic; Reading Lessons and Exercises, with Analyses and a Vocabulary of Useful Words. Fcap. 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- PINCOTT, FREDERIC, M.R.A.S.**
- THE HINDI MANUAL. Comprising a Grammar of the Hindi Language both Literary and Provincial; a Complete Syntax; Exercises in various styles of Hindi Composition; Dialogues on several subjects; and a Complete Vocabulary. Fcap. 8vo. 6s.
- PORTMAN, M. V., M.R.A.S.**
- A MANUAL OF THE ANDAMANESE LANGUAGES, in the Roman Character. 18mo. 10s. 6d.
- RAVERTY, MAJOR H. G.**
- THE PUSHTO MANUAL. Comprising a Concise Grammar; Exercises and Dialogues; Phrases, Proverbs, and Vocabulary. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.
- ROBERTSON, F. E.**
- AN ARABIC VOCABULARY FOR EGYPT, in the Roman Character. The Arabic by Lüfti Yüssef Ayrat. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. (15 piastres).
- ROOS-KEPPEL, MAJOR G.** (President of Central Committee of Examiners in Pushto Language).
- A MANUAL OF PUSHTU. Demy 8vo, cloth. (Third Impression.) 12s. 6d. net.
- SCHNURMANN, J. NESTOR.**
- THE RUSSIÁN MANUAL. Comprising a Condensed Grammar, Exercises with Analyses, Useful Dialogues, Reading Lessons, Tables of Coins, Weights and Measures, and a Collection of Idioms and Proverbs alphabetically arranged. Fcap. 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- AID TO RUSSIAN COMPOSITION. Containing Exercises, Vocabularies, Syntactical Rules, and Specimens of Manuscript. Fcap. 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- TIEN, REV. ANTON, PH.D., M.R.A.S.**
- MANUAL OF COLLOQUIAL ARABIC. Comprising Practical Rules for Learning the Language, Vocabulary, Dialogues, Letters and Idioms, &c., in English and Arabic. Fcap. 7s. 6d.
- NEO-HELLENIC MANUAL. Comprising Practical Rules for Learning the Language, Vocabulary, Dialogues, Letters, Idioms, &c. Fcap. 5s.
- WILLIAMS, MONIER.**
- SANSKRIT MANUAL. To which is added a Vocabulary by A. E. Gough. 18mo. 7s. 6d.

[315, 10]

